A First
ARABIC GRAMMAR

القواعد العربية الأولى

Yasien Mohamed
Muhammed Haron

Contents

Introduction i
Note to the Teacher iii
Acknowledgements v
The Arabic Alphabet vii
Lesson 1 The Noun 1
Lesson 2 The Adjective 4
The Adjectival Phrase: Masculine 4
Lesson 3 The Feminine Noun 8
Lesson 4 The Adjectival Phrase: Feminine 11
Lesson 5 The Demonstrative Pronoun: This 14
Lesson 6 The Demonstrative Pronoun: That 18
Lesson 7 The Detached Pronouns: He and She 21
Lesson 8 The Detached Pronouns: I and You (m. and f.) 25
Lesson 9 The Preposition: 'Inda 30
Lesson 10 The Definite Article: Al 34
Lesson 11 The Adjectival Phrase: Definite 38
Lesson 12 The Nominal Sentence 42
Lesson 13 The Interrogative Particles: Man and Ma 46
Lesson 14 The Interrogative Particle: Hal 51
Lesson 15 The Attached Pronouns 56
Lesson 16 The Interrogative Particle: Kayfa 62
Lesson 17 The Prepositions: Fi, 'Alā, Ilā and Min 68
Lesson 18 The Interrogative Particle: Ayna 73
Lesson 19 The Dual 78
Lesson 20 The Adjectival Phrase: Dual 82
Lesson 21 The Nominal Sentence: Dual 86
Lesson 22 The Sound Masculine Plural 91
Lesson 23 The Adjectival Phrase: Sound Masc. Pl. 96
Lesson 24 The Nominal Sentence: Sound Masc. Pl. 100
Lesson 25 The Sound Feminine Plural 104
Lesson 26 The Adjectival Phrase: Sound Fem. Pl. 109
Lesson 27 The Nominal Sentence: Sound Fem. Pl. 113
Lesson 28 The Conjunctions 117
Lesson 29 The Perfect Tense Verb and the Accusative Case 122
Lesson 30 The Imperfect Tense Verb 130
Lesson 31 The Iḍāfa-Construction 135
Lesson 32 The Verb and the Attached Pronoun 140

Revision Exercises
Exercise One 145
Exercise Two 150
Exercise Three 155
Exercise Four 161
Exercise Five 166
Conversation
Greetings 172
Acquaintance 172
At the Library 173
Religion 174
My Family 175
Poems
Morning Prayer 177
Allah 177
The Moon has Appeared 178
The Islamic Anthem 178
The Pupil 179
Some Sayings of the Messenger of Allah 180
Proverbs 182
Islamic Expressions 183
Oral Expressions 184
Arabic Grammatical Terms 186
The Pronouns
The Detached Pronouns 190
The Attached Pronouns 191
Tenses
The Perfect/Past Tense Verb 192
The Imperfect/Present Tense Verb 193
The Imperative/Command 193
Vocabulary: English–Arabic 194
Proper Names 203
Names of the Months 205
Names of the Days 206
Names of the Festivals 206
Numbers
Cardinal Numbers 207
Ordinal Numbers 208
The Verbs (The Imperfect Verb & The Perfect Verb 209
Recommended References 211

Introduction

مُقَدِّمَةٌ

Arabic is a Semitic language of international importance, not only as the spoken language in the Middle East and North Africa, but also as the religious language of a billion Muslims scattered throughout the world. The Holy Qur'an, being the Book of Divine Guidance for Muslims, was revealed in Arabic more than fourteen hundred years ago, therefore the religious significance of the language is obvious. Since its revelation the Qur'an has remained unchanged. The grammatical structure of the Arabic language which finds its source in the Qur'an has also remained intact. Arabic grammar must consequently be the classical grammar of the Qur'an.

There is a widespread need and demand for a new Arabic grammar that can serve as a suitable classroom guide for beginners. Praiseworthy efforts have been made in Britain and America, but they have not fulfilled this need. Cowan's *Modern Literary Arabic*, for example, is felt to be unsatisfactory as a classroom book by both teachers and pupils. The main shortcoming of this book is that it provides no exercises. Teachers have the cumbersome task of compiling their own exercises for each lesson.

Cowan's book does, of course, serve as a useful reference for Arabic grammar, and the author never intended it to be used for any other purpose (see preface to his book). Nevertheless, the lack of a suitable practice book and the requests of teachers motivated us to embark upon the task of preparing this book.

We have assumed that students are already able to identify the letters of the Arabic alphabet and their sounds. Our purpose is therefore to introduce them to formal grammar.

A First Arabic Grammar does not deal exhaustively with Arabic grammar, and further materials for more advanced learners are planned. However, most major grammatical features of Modern Literary Arabic are covered.

For the purpose of simplification and easy assimilation we have limited this book to the singular pronouns and singular verbs, but we have introduced the dual and the plural of the noun. The authors ask the reader's forbearance for any shortcomings in this modest attempt and welcome any suggestions for future improvements to the text.

YASIEN MOHAMED
MUHAMMED HARON

Note to the Teacher

مُذَكِّرَة لِلْمُعَلِّم

Although this book is designed to teach Arabic grammar, it could also serve as a basis for classical Arabic conversation. The oral drill method can be applied to supplement the grammatical rules that the teacher wishes to emphasise. Dialogues in the appendix may serve as aids for oral conversation. The teacher should, as far as possible, use classroom expressions and instructions in Arabic to create an atmosphere conducive to the learning of the Arabic language. A list of useful oral expressions is included in the appendix for this purpose.

What makes this book pedagogically valuable is the variety of exercises which are neither based purely on the translation grammatical approach, nor on the direct approach, but are to some extent an integration of both methods. The personal ability and orientation of the teacher will determine the approach.

Another special feature of this book is that it covers many of the basic principles of Arabic grammar in a style that is very simple and concise. The explanations are easy and they follow systematically. Great care has been taken in introducing new grammatical features in a gradual and step-by-step approach. An average of 10 new words are introduced in each lesson and these words recur throughout the text. It is expected that if pupils have successfully worked through all the exercises they will have grasped the grammatical principles, assimilated more than 350 common words and will be able to use them in meaningful sentences.

An appendix of proverbs, sayings, conversations and poems introduces variety and liveliness to the learning process that has traditionally been

confined to memorization of grammatical rules. The appendix is therefore not intended for grammatical analysis, but to stimulate enthusiasm for Arabic as a living language. In their experience the authors have found that poetry recitals, plays, speeches and other forms of active student participation do indeed enhance interest and enjoyment.

An English–Arabic vocabulary is provided to make easy reference to a word that may have been forgotten. The revision exercises are intended to be sufficiently comprehensive to be used for the purpose of consolidation, and can also serve as a guide when examination papers have to be set.

This book is designed as an aid for teachers and students. The teacher's imagination and creativity will play a vital part in making the lesson interesting, enjoyable and educational. We hope that this book will serve its intended purpose.

Acknowledgements

كَلِمَةُ شُكْرٍ وَتَقْدِيرٍ

Firstly, we thank Allah for His bounties. We also forward our thanks to our friends who encouraged us in the preparation of this book, especially our former teacher, Mr Mahmoud Dawood, who has painstakingly gone through the text with a 'fine comb'; our colleague, Abdul Majied Mohamed for his critical comments and assistance; Mr Ganief Allie and his colleagues for their suggestions and encouragement in this undertaking; Professor Syed Habibul Haq Nadvi, who studied and approved this text; and Dr Hugh Miller who meticulously edited the text and improved sections of it.

We also extend our sincerest thanks to our students, with whom we were able to apply the text in its manuscript form, for their observations and their constructive contributions; and to Mrs Farieda Shedrick for typing the English. We are also indebted to our wives for their patient perseverance, continuous encouragement and assistance.

Last but not least, we would like to thank Dr Taïeb Souissi (Assistant Professor of Applied Linguistics at King Saud University in Riyadh), who patiently has corrected, reviewed and supervised this work.

Finally we acknowledge that the errors which remain are, of course, due to our own oversight, knowing that there is no success except through Allah's Will.

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

المملكة العربية السعودية

وزارة المعارف

THE ARABIC LANGUAGE INSTITUTE

جامعة الملك سعود

معهد اللغة العربية

Kingdom of Saudi Arabia

King Saud University

Date 4-5-1986 التاريخ : No. الرقم :

To whom it may concern

I, the undersigned, Dr. Taïeb SOUISSI, certify that I have superoised the book "First Steps in Arabic Grammar", authored by Yasien Mohamed and Muhammed Haron. I am pleased to recommend its publication without reservation becaus of the simple and scientific method proposed by the authocs. What makes the book pedagogically valuable is the variety of exercices, the step by step introduction of arabic grammatical features and the carefully selected vocabulary.

Taïeb Souissi (Ph.D.)



Riyadh P. O. Box 4276

الرياض ص.ب ٤٢٧٤

The Arabic Alphabet

اَلْحُرُوْفُ الْهِجَائِيَّةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ

Name	Letter	Transcription
alif	ا	a
bā'	ب	b
tā'	ت	t
thā'	ث	t̲
jīm	ج	j
ḥā'	ح	ḥ
k̲hā'	خ	
dāl	د	d
d̲hāl	ذ	d̲
rā'	ر	r
zā'	ز	z
sīn	س	s
shīn	ش	š
ṣād	ص	ṣ
ḍād	ض	ḍ
ṭā'	ط	ṭ
ẓā'	ظ	ẓ
cayn	ع	c
g̲hayn	غ	ḡ
fā'	ف	f
qāf	ق	q
kāf	ك	k
lām	ل	l

Name	Letter	Transcription
mīm	م	m
nūn	ن	n
wāw	و	w
hā'	ه	h
yā'	ي	y

Notes:

1. The Arabic alphabet consists of 28 consonantal letters. Some grammarians consider the *hamza* ء and the *lam-alif* لا as separate letters, which brings the number to 30.

2. There are various accepted methods of phonetic transcription. The one used in the above table is in conformity with the *Hans Wehr Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic*. We have used this system so as to avoid confusing the student, who will be called upon to make extensive use of the Wehr dictionary in further studies.

3. Three of the consonants, viz. *yā'* (ي), *wāw* (و), and *alif* (ا), are used as long vowels as well as diphthongs.

4. Every consonant in a vocalized Arabic text is provided with a short vowel sign. There are three such short vowel signs, viz: *ḍamma* ـُ indicating the vowel **u**, *fatḥa* ـَ indicating the vowel **a**, and *kasra* ـِ indicating the vowel **i**. When these vowel signs are doubled, thereby indicating *indefiniteness*, they are known as *ḍammatāni* ـٌ **un**, *fatḥatāni* ـً **an**, and *kasratāni* ـٍ **in**. The pronunciation of an **n** is called *tanwīn*.

5. Other signs are also used in writing. They are: *sukūn* (ـْ) (meaning silence), indicating an absence of a vowel; and *shadda'* (ـّ) indicating the doubling of a consonant.

The Noun
اَلْإِسْمُ

In Arabic there are only two genders:

(a) masculine مُذَكَّرٌ (b) feminine مُؤَنَّثٌ

In this lesson we shall only deal with the nouns that are masculine.

اَلْكَلِمَةُ	مَعْنَاهَا
وَلَدٌ	A boy
كِتَابٌ	A book

Explanation:

1. In the block above both nouns are masculine. The first noun وَلَدٌ refers to a person and the second noun كِتَابٌ refers to a thing. Thus in Arabic the masculine noun can either refer to a person or to a non-person (an object or thing).
2. Both nouns are indefinite. وَلَدٌ means "a boy" and not "the boy" and كِتَابٌ means "a book" and not "the book"; thus, they do not refer to a definite or specific noun.
3. Their indefiniteness is indicated by the ḍammatāni (ٌ), that is the sign on the last letter of each word.

Examples and New Vocabulary:

(A) Non-persons (Things)		(B) Persons	
A house	بَيْتٌ	A father	أَبٌ
A door	بَابٌ	A brother	أَخٌ
A wall	جِدَارٌ	A son	اِبْنٌ
A street	شَارِعٌ	A boy	وَلَدٌ
A lesson	دَرْسٌ	A man	رَجُلٌ
A book	كِتَابٌ	A teacher	مُعَلِّمٌ
A pen	قَلَمٌ	A pupil	تِلْمِيذٌ
A desk	مَكْتَبٌ	A servant	خَادِمٌ

Note:

1. Group (A) refers to non-persons and group (B) refers to persons.
2. All the nouns above are masculine.
3. They are all indefinite as indicated by the ḍammatāni (ٌ).

Exercise 1:

1. Give the Arabic meanings for the following nouns:

 a. A pupil
 b. A desk
 c. A book
 d. A boy
 e. A street

2. Give the English meanings of the following nouns:

(١) قَلَمٌ (٤) فَرْسٌ

(٢) مُعَلِّمٌ (٥) رَجُلٌ

(٣) بَابٌ

3. Make the following nouns indefinite by inserting the ḍammatāni:

(١) بَيْتَ (٤) أَبَ

(٢) أَخْ (٥) اِبْنَ

(٣) جِدَار

4. Separate the nouns which refer to persons from those which refer to things:

(١) تِلْمِيذٌ (٤) وَلَدٌ

(٢) شَارِعٌ (٥) خَادِمٌ

(٣) مَكْتَبٌ

5. Answer the following questions:
 a. How many genders are there in Arabic?
 b. What are the Arabic terms for each gender?
 c. What indicates that the noun is indefinite?
 d. Does the masculine noun refer only to human beings?
 e. Give an example of a masculine noun that refers to an object.



The Adjective

اَلصِّفَةُ

As in English, the adjective in Arabic also describes the noun. Depending on the noun, the adjective can be either masculine or feminine, definite or indefinite. Here are two adjectives that are masculine and indefinite:

مَعْنَاهَا	اَلْكَلِمَةُ
Big	كَبِيرٌ
Small	صَغِيرٌ

Explanation:
Both adjectives are indefinite as indicated by the ḍammatāni (ٌ).

The Adjectival Phrase: Masculine

اَلتَّعْبِيرُ النَّعْتِيُّ : مُذَكَّرٌ

The adjectival phrase consists of a noun and an adjective. The adjective, as in English, describes the noun.

معناه	التعبير النعتي
A small boy	وَلَدٌ صَغِيرٌ

Explanation:

1. The adjective صَغِيرٌ (small), tells us more about the noun وَلَدٌ (a boy).
2. The noun in Arabic always comes before the adjective. Thus وَلَدٌ is written first, then follows the adjective.
3. The adjective must always agree with the noun. When the noun is masculine and indefinite, then the adjective also has to be masculine and indefinite. When the noun takes a ḍammatāni (ٌ), then the adjective must also take a ḍammatāni (ٌ).
4. The term for a "noun" in Arabic is اِسْمٌ . However this term is not used when the noun is described by an adjective; the term مَوْصُوفٌ is used instead.

Examples:

A beautiful house	بَيْتٌ جَمِيلٌ
A long street	شَارِعٌ طَوِيلٌ
A new lesson	دَرْسٌ جَدِيدٌ
A small book	كِتَابٌ صَغِيرٌ
A short pen	قَلَمٌ قَصِيرٌ
A clever teacher	مُعَلِّمٌ ذَكِيٌّ
A happy man	رَجُلٌ سَعِيدٌ
A good student	طَالِبٌ طَيِّبٌ

New Vocabulary:

Beautiful	جَمِيلٌ	Ugly	قَبِيحٌ
Tall	طَوِيلٌ	Short	قَصِيرٌ
New	جَدِيدٌ	Old	قَدِيمٌ
Happy	سَعِيدٌ	Sad	حَزِينٌ
Good	طَيِّبٌ	Clever	ذَكِيٌّ
Wide	وَاسِعٌ	Narrow	ضَيِّقٌ

Exercise 2:

1. (a) Give the Arabic for the following:
 a. Tall
 b. Small
 c. Clever
 d. Beautiful
 e. Sad

 (b) Give the English for the following:

 (١) كَبِيرٌ
 (٢) قَصِيرٌ
 (٣) سَعِيدٌ
 (٤) قَدِيمٌ
 (٥) جَمِيلٌ

2. Translate the following phrases into Arabic:
 a. A good man
 b. A happy student
 c. A sad boy
 d. A big pen
 e. A good book

3. Translate the following phrases into English:

(١) تِلْمِيذٌ ذَكِيٌّ
(٢) شَارِعٌ قَصِيرٌ
(٣) كِتَابٌ قَدِيمٌ
(٤) بَيْتٌ صَغِيرٌ
(٥) دَرْسٌ طَوِيلٌ

4. Choose suitable adjectives from those given in brackets:

(حَزِينٌ ، ذَكِيٌّ ، جَمِيلٌ ، طَوِيلٌ ، قَدِيمٌ)

(١) أَبٌ
(٢) مُعَلِّمٌ
(٣) شَارِعٌ
(٤) وَلَدٌ
(٥) قَلَمٌ

5. State whether the following statements are true or false. If any of them are false, correct the sentence:
 a. In Arabic the adjective comes before the noun.
 b. The noun must be definite and the adjective indefinite in order to construct an indefinite adjectival phrase.
 c. The Arabic term for the noun described is " مَوْصُوفٌ ".
 d. The Arabic term for adjective is " اِسْمٌ ".
 e. The meaning of the word " تِلْمِيذٌ " is man.



The Feminine Noun

اَلْإِسْمُ اَلْمُؤَنَّثُ

The feminine noun in Arabic, like the masculine, can refer either to a person or to a non-person.

اَلْكَلِمَةُ	مَعْنَاهَا
مُعَلِّمَةٌ	A teacher
مَدْرَسَةٌ	A school

Explanation:
The first noun, مُعَلِّمَةٌ (a teacher) refers to a person, and the second noun, مَدْرَسَةٌ (a school), refers to a non-person. Both nouns are feminine and indefinite.

Note:
A noun can be considered feminine if:
1. it is feminine by meaning, e.g. بِنْتٌ a girl.
2. it takes a 'ṭā' marbūṭa' (ة) (atun), e.g. اِبْنَةٌ a daughter.

Examples and New Vocabulary

A mother	أُمٌّ	A chalkboard	سَبُّورَةٌ
A sister	أُخْتٌ	A window	نَافِذَةٌ
A student	طَالِبَةٌ	A car	سَيَّارَةٌ
A headmistress	مُدِيرَةٌ	A daughter	إِبْنَةٌ
A library	مَكْتَبَةٌ	A table	مِنْضَدَةٌ
A rubber	مِمْسَحَةٌ	A ruler	مِسْطَرَةٌ

Exercise 3:

1. Give the Arabic for the following nouns:
 a. A student
 b. A sister
 c. A mother
 d. A library
 e. A ruler

2. Give the English for the following nouns:

(١) مِمْسَحَةٌ
(٢) مَدْرَسَةٌ
(٣) سَبُّورَةٌ
(٤) تِلْمِيذَةٌ
(٥) مُدِيرَةٌ

3. Give the feminine gender of the following nouns:

(١) أَبٌ
(٢) مُدِيرٌ
(٣) وَلَدٌ
(٤) إِبْنٌ
(٥) طَالِبٌ

4. Vocalize the following:

(١) منضلة (٤) ابنة

(٢) معلمة (٥) مكتبة

(٣) ناقلة

5. Answer the following:
 a. Mention two ways in which a noun can be considered feminine.
 b. Give an Arabic example of a feminine noun by meaning.
 c. Give an example of a feminine noun that ends with a ṭāʾ marbūṭa.
 d. Give the Arabic term for the "feminine noun".
 e. Give the Arabic term for the noun qualified by an adjective.



The Adjectival Phrase: Feminine

اَلتَّعْبِيرُ النَّعْتِيُّ : مُؤَنَّثٌ

As in the masculine adjectival phrase, the noun comes before the adjective which must agree in gender. If the noun is feminine, then the adjective must also be feminine, and if the noun is masculine, then the adjective must also be masculine.

مُؤَنَّثٌ	مُذَكَّرٌ
تِلْمِيذَةٌ ذَكِيَّةٌ 1. A clever pupil	رَجُلٌ ذَكِيٌّ 2. A clever man
غُرْفَةٌ وَاسِعَةٌ 3. A wide room	شَارِعٌ ضَيِّقٌ 4. A narrow street

Explanation:

1. In the above examples, notice that each adjectival phrase is grouped either in the masculine or in the feminine gender.
2. In example 1 the noun تِلْمِيذٌ (a pupil) is feminine and the adjective ذَكِيَّةٌ (clever) which describes it, is also feminine.
3. In example 2 the noun رَجُلٌ is masculine, so the adjective ذَكِيٌّ is also masculine.
4. In examples 1 and 3, the nouns end with a ṭā' marbūṭa, therefore the adjectives also end with a ṭā' marbūṭa.
5. Note that examples 1 and 3 are feminine adjectival phrases and that examples 2 and 4 are masculine adjectival phrases.

Examples:

An excellent pupil	تِلْمِيذَةٌ مُمْتَازَةٌ
A friendly daughter	اِبْنَةٌ أَنِيسَةٌ
An active mother	أُمٌّ نَشِيطَةٌ
A polite sister	أُخْتٌ مُهَذَّبَةٌ
A clean window	نَافِذَةٌ نَظِيفَةٌ
A useful map	خَرِيطَةٌ مُفِيدَةٌ
A big city	مَدِينَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ
A small village	قَرْيَةٌ صَغِيرَةٌ

New Vocabulary:

A window	نَافِذَةٌ	Excellent	مُمْتَازٌ
A city	مَدِينَةٌ	Friendly	أَنِيسَةٌ
Industrious	مُجْتَهِدٌ	Active	نَشِيطٌ
Polite	مُهَذَّبٌ	Clean	نَظِيفٌ
Useful	مُفِيدٌ	A room	غُرْفَةٌ

Exercise 4:

1. Translate the following phrases into Arabic:
 a. A useful pen
 b. A friendly teacher
 c. A polite pupil
 d. A long lesson
 e. An old city

2. Translate the following phrases into English:

(١) مَدِينَةٌ نَظِيفَةٌ
(٢) نَافِذَةٌ وَاسِعَةٌ
(٣) شَارِعٌ ضَيِّقٌ
(٤) بِنْتٌ مُهَذَّبَةٌ
(٥) دَرْسٌ مُفِيدٌ

3. Convert the following phrases in the feminine gender:

(١) وَلَدٌ طَوِيلٌ
(٢) اِبْنٌ مُجْتَهِدٌ
(٣) أَبٌ طَيِّبٌ
(٤) أَخٌ أَنِيسٌ
(٥) مُعَلِّمٌ مُمْتَازٌ

4. Choose suitable adjectives from those given in brackets:

(مُفِيدَةٌ ، مُمْتَازٌ ، مُهَذَّبَةٌ ، قَدِيمَةٌ ، صَغِيرٌ)

(١) تِلْمِيذٌ
(٢) أُخْتٌ
(٣) غُرْفَةٌ
(٤) مِسْطَرَةٌ
(٥) كِتَابٌ

5. Vocalize:

(١) خادم مجتهد
(٢) أمٌّ نظيفة
(٣) بنت حزينة
(٤) بيت قديم
(٥) جلار قبيح

The Demonstrative Pronoun: This

اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ

The demonstrative pronouns like: "this", "that", "these", "those" refer to nouns. In this lesson we will confine ourselves to the use of " هٰذَا " and " هٰذِهِ " which mean "this".

مُؤَنَّثٌ	مُذَكَّرٌ
هٰذِهِ بِنْتٌ	هٰذَا وَلَدٌ
This is a girl.	This is a boy.

Explanation:

1. In the first example, وَلَدٌ refers to the masculine noun.
2. In the second example, بِنْتٌ refers to the feminine noun.
3. The demonstrative pronouns not only refer to persons, but also to things, like كِتَابٌ (a book) or قَلَمٌ (a pen).
4. Both examples above are sentences.
5. Note that the nouns which follow the demonstrative pronoun are indefinite, as indicated by the ḍammaṭāni (ٌ).

Examples:

1. The use of هٰذَا

 a. This is a classroom. هٰذَا فَصْلٌ

b. This is a note book. هٰذَا دَفْتَرٌ

c. This is a book. هٰذَا كِتَابٌ

d. This is a pen. هٰذَا قَلَمٌ

e. This is a desk. هٰذَا مَكْتَبٌ

2. The use of هٰذِهِ

a. This is a daughter. هٰذِهِ اِبْنَةٌ

b. This is a sister. هٰذِهِ أُخْتٌ

c. This is a map. هٰذِهِ خَرِيطَةٌ

d. This is a library. هٰذِهِ مَكْتَبَةٌ

e. This is a chalkboard. هٰذِهِ سَبُّورَةٌ

3. The noun can also take an adjective which agrees with the demonstrative pronoun in gender, as shown in the examples below:

a. This is a useful lesson. هٰذَا دَرْسٌ مُفِيدٌ

b. This is a big university. هٰذِهِ جَامِعَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ

c. This is a beautiful car. هٰذِهِ سَيَّارَةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ

d. This is a new watch. هٰذِهِ سَاعَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ

e. This is an active pupil. هٰذَا تِلْمِيذٌ نَشِيطٌ

Note:

1. The adjective that follows a masculine noun and the demonstrative pronoun does not take the ţā' marbūţa and is, therefore, masculine.

2. The adjectives, in three of the last five examples above, follow the feminine gender and therefore take the ţā' marbūţa.

New Vocabulary:

A map	خَرِيطَةٌ	A bag	حَقِيبَةٌ
A note-book	دَفْتَرٌ	A bicycle	دَرَّاجَةٌ
A watch	سَاعَةٌ	A classroom	فَصْلٌ
A university	جَامِعَةٌ	A bus	حافِلَةٌ
A gift	هَدِيَّةٌ	Humble	مُتَواضِعٌ

Exercise 5:

1. Translate the following sentences into Arabic:
 a. This is a clean chalkboard
 b. This is a school.
 c. This is a desk.
 d. This is a tall boy.
 e. This is a useful note-book.

2. Translate the following sentences into English:

(١) هٰذَا رَجُلٌ نَشِيطٌ

(٢) هٰذِهِ مِمْسَحَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ

(٣) هٰذِهِ غُرْفَةٌ ضَيِّقَةٌ

(٤) هٰذَا فَصْلٌ

(٥) هٰذِهِ سَبُّورَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ

3. Complete the following sentences by adding suitable adjectives:

(١) هٰذِهِ مِنْضَدَةٌ
(٢) هٰذَا مُعَلِّمٌ
(٣) هٰذَا دَفْتَرٌ
(٤) هٰذِهِ خَرِيطَةٌ
(٥) هٰذِهِ حَقِيبَةٌ

4. Form sentences by using the correct demonstrative pronouns with the following nouns:

(١) دَرَّاجَةٌ
(٢) دَرْسٌ
(٣) مَدِينَةٌ
(٤) جَامِعَةٌ
(٥) أُسْتَاذٌ

5. Choose the correct word in brackets:

(١) هٰذَا بَيْتٌ (جَمِيلٌ / جَمِيلَةٌ)
(٢) هٰذِهِ طَالِبَةٌ (مُجْتَهِدَةٌ / مُجْتَهِدٌ)
(٣) (هٰذَا / هٰذِهِ) تِلْمِيذٌ مُتَوَاضِعٌ
(٤) هٰذَا (أَخٌ / أُخْتٌ) نَشِيطٌ
(٥) هٰذِهِ (بِنْتٌ / وَلَدٌ)



The Demonstrative Pronoun: That

اِسْمُ الْإِشَارَةِ

In this lesson we will study the use of تِلْكَ and ذٰلِكَ which mean "that".

مُؤَنَّثٌ	مُذَكَّرٌ
تِلْكَ مُمَرِّضَةٌ	ذٰلِكَ طَبِيبٌ
That is a nurse.	That is a doctor.

Explanation:

1. In the first example ذٰلِكَ is used to refer to a masculine noun.
2. In the second example تِلْكَ is used to refer to a feminine noun.
3. The demonstrative pronouns refer not only to persons, but also to objects like فَصْلٌ (a classroom) or طَائِرَةٌ (an aeroplane).
4. Both examples above are complete sentences.
5. Note that the nouns which follow the demonstrative pronouns are indefinite, as indicated by the ḍammatāni.

Examples:

1. The use of ذٰلِكَ

 a. That is a book. ذٰلِكَ كِتَابٌ

 b. That is a pupil. ذٰلِكَ تِلْمِيذٌ

c. That is a useful lesson. ذٰلِكَ دَرْسٌ مُفِيدٌ

d. That is a famous book. ذٰلِكَ كِتَابٌ مَشْهُورٌ

e. That is a noble merchant. ذٰلِكَ تَاجِرٌ كَرِيمٌ

2. The use of تِلْكَ

a. That is a ship. تِلْكَ سَفِينَةٌ

b. That is a cook. تِلْكَ طَبَّاخَةٌ

c. That is a new bag. تِلْكَ حَقِيبَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ

d. That is an obedient servant. تِلْكَ خَادِمَةٌ مُطِيعَةٌ

e. That is a big aeroplane. تِلْكَ طَائِرَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ

New Vocabulary:

A merchant	تَاجِرٌ	A ship	سَفِينَةٌ
A male nurse	مُمَرِّضٌ	An aeroplane	طَائِرَةٌ
A doctor	طَبِيبٌ	Noble	كَرِيمٌ
A writer	كَاتِبٌ	Obedient	مُطِيعٌ
A cook	طَبَّاخٌ	Famous	مَشْهُورٌ

Exercise 6:

1. Translate the following into Arabic:
 a. That is a famous university.
 b. That is a teacher (f.).
 c. That is a ruler.
 d. That is a tall boy.
 e. That is a beautiful ship.

2. Translate into English:

(١) تِلْكَ بِنْتٌ كَرِيمَةٌ
(٢) ذٰلِكَ دَفْتَرٌ كَبِيرٌ
(٣) تِلْكَ مَدْرَسَةٌ
(٤) تِلْكَ طَبَّاخَةٌ مَشْهُورَةٌ
(٥) ذٰلِكَ وَلَدٌ نَظِيفٌ

3. Complete the following sentences by adding suitable adjectives.

(١) ذٰلِكَ طَالِبٌ
(٢) هٰذِهِ حَقِيبَةٌ
(٣) ذٰلِكَ بَابٌ
(٤) تِلْكَ دَرَّاجَةٌ
(٥) هٰذَا أُسْتَاذٌ

4. Form sentences by using the correct demonstrative pronouns with the following nouns:

(١) سَاعَةٌ
(٢) مَكْتَبٌ
(٣) مَدِينَةٌ
(٤) سَفِينَةٌ
(٥) تَاجِرٌ

5. Choose the correct word in brackets:

(١) هٰذِهِ جَامِعَةٌ (كَبِيرٌ / صَغِيرَةٌ)
(٢) تِلْكَ حَرِيطَةٌ (جَمِيلَةٌ / قَبِيحٌ)
(٣) (ذٰلِكَ / تِلْكَ) مُعَلِّمَةٌ مُتَوَاضِعَةٌ
(٤) (هٰذَا / هٰذِهِ) سَبُّورَةٌ نَظِيفَةٌ
(٥) هٰذَا رَجُلٌ (طَوِيلَةٌ / قَصِيرٌ)

The Detached Pronouns: He and She

اَلضَّمَائِرُ الْمُنْفَصِلَةُ

In this lesson we will only learn the two singular personal pronouns " هُوَ " and " هِيَ ".

مُؤَنَّثٌ	مُذَكَّرٌ
هِيَ طَالِبَةٌ She is a student.	هُوَ طَالِبٌ He is a student.

Explanation:

1. The masculine pronoun " هُوَ " means "he". As is noted in the above example, " هُوَ " refers to persons.
2. The feminine personal pronoun "هِيَ" means "she". As is noted in the above example, "هِيَ" refers persons.
3. Note that there is no neuter gender in Arabic and therefore non-person elements must be either masculine or feminine.

Examples:

1. The use of هُوَ

 a. He is a son. هُوَ اِبْنٌ

 b. He is a doctor. هُوَ طَبِيبٌ

2. The use of هِيَ

 a. She is a doctor. هِيَ طَبِيبَةٌ

 b. She is a servant. هِيَ خَادِمَةٌ

Note:

1. There is no word for "is" in Arabic.

2. These independent personal pronouns can also be used with adjectives.

Examples:

مُؤَنَّثٌ	مُذَكَّرٌ
هِيَ قَصِيرَةٌ	هُوَ طَوِيلٌ
She is short.	He is tall.

Explanation:

1. In the first example, the personal pronoun هُوَ (he) is masculine and the adjective طَوِيلٌ (tall) is also masculine.
2. In the second example, the adjective قَصِيرٌ (short) is feminine (as indicated by the tā' marbūṭa) because it must agree with هِيَ (she) which is feminine.
3. Note that the adjectives in both examples are indefinite.

Examples:

1. The use of هُوَ

 a. He is sad. هُوَ حَزِينٌ

 b. He is a merchant. هُوَ تَاجِرٌ

 c. He is small. هُوَ صَغِيرٌ

2. The use of هِيَ

a. She is humble. هِيَ مُتَوَاضِعَةٌ

b. She is happy. هِيَ سَعِيدَةٌ

c. She is rich. هِيَ غَنِيَّةٌ

New Vocabulary:

Broken	مَكْسُورٌ	An engineer	مُهَنْدِسٌ
A clinic/surgery	عِيَادَةٌ	A worker	عَامِلٌ
Kitchen	مَطْبَخٌ	A mosque	مَسْجِدٌ
A teacher	مُدَرِّسٌ	Sincere	مُخْلِصٌ
A leader	زَعِيمٌ	An author	مُؤَلِّفٌ

Exercise 7:

1. Translate the following into Arabic:

a.	It is a car.	f.	She is clever.
b.	She is a good nurse.	g.	This is a clean kitchen.
c.	He is a sincere man.	h.	She is an engineer.
d.	This is a big room.	i.	That is a big library.
e.	That is a chalkboard.	j.	This is broken.

2. Translate the following into English:

(١) هُوَ عَامِلٌ (٦) هِيَ حَزِينَةٌ

(٢) هَذَا دَرْسٌ جَدِيدٌ (٧) هِيَ مُهَنْدِسَةٌ نَشِيطَةٌ

(٣) هُوَ ذَكِيٌّ (٨) هِيَ مُسْلِمَةٌ

(٤) ذَلِكَ مَسْجِدٌ (٩) هٰذا مَطْبَخٌ كَبِيرٌ

(٥) هُوَ نَظِيفٌ (١٠) هِيَ مُدَرِّسَةٌ مُخْلِصَةٌ

3. Choose the correct word in brackets:

(١) هُوَ (تِلْمِيذَةٌ / وَلَدٌ) (٦) هٰذِهِ (مِنْضَدَةٌ / قَلَمٌ)

(٢) تِلْكَ (مِسْطَرَةٌ / كِتَابٌ) (٧) (هُوَ / هِيَ) ذَكِيٌّ

(٣) (هٰذِهِ / هِيَ) غُرْفَةٌ (٨) هٰذَا (عَامِلٌ / أُسْتَاذَةٌ)

(٤) ذٰلِكَ (مُمَرِّضٌ / مُمَرِّضَةٌ) (٩) هِيَ (مُهَنْدِسَةٌ / ذَكِيٌّ)

(٥) هِيَ (بِنْتٌ / رَجُلٌ) سَعِيدَةٌ (١٠) تِلْكَ حَقِيبَةٌ (مَكْسُورٌ/مَكْسُورَةٌ)

4. Complete the following with an appropriate word:

(١) وَلَدٌ (٦) عِيَادَةٌ نَظِيفَةٌ

(٢) جَدِيدَةٌ (٧) بَيْتٌ قَدِيمٌ

(٣) جَامِعَةٌ (٨) هٰذَا

(٤) هٰذِهِ طَائِرَةٌ (٩) ذٰلِكَ مُهَذَّبٌ

(٥) هِيَ مُدِيرَةٌ (١٠) هُوَ مُخْلِصٌ

5. Vocalize the following sentences:

(١) هو طبيب (٦) هي ممرضة أنيسة

(٢) تلك حقيبة (٧) هو زعيم

(٣) هذه منضدة طويلة (٨) ذلك مطبخ نظيف

(٤) هذا ولد ذكيّ (٩) ذلك شارع واسع

(٥) هي نظيفة (١٠) هذا مكتب

The Detached Pronouns: I and You (m. and f.)

اَلضَّمَائِرُ الْمُنْفَصِلَةُ

A:

اَلْجُمْلَةُ	مَعْنَاهَا
أَنْتَ مُدَرِّسٌ You are a teacher (m.).	أَنْتِ مُدَرِّسَةٌ You are a teacher (f.).

Explanation:

1. In the first example, the independent personal pronoun أَنْتَ (you) is used to refer to a masculine noun, e.g. مُدَرِّسٌ (a teacher).
2. In the second example, أَنْتِ (you) is used to refer to a feminine noun, e.g. مُدَرِّسَةٌ (a teacher).
3. Note that the two pronouns أَنْتَ and أَنْتِ refer to persons and not to things.
4. Both these pronouns can refer to adjectives as well.

Examples:

1. The use of أَنْتَ

 a. You are an engineer. أَنْتَ مُهَنْدِسٌ

 b. You are a director. أَنْتَ مُدِيرٌ

 c. You are a poet. أَنْتَ شَاعِرٌ

 d. You are pleasent. أَنْتَ لَطِيفٌ

 e. You are generous. أَنْتَ كَرِيمٌ

2. The use of أَنْتِ

a. You are an engineer. أَنْتِ مُهَنْدِسَةٌ

b. You are a nurse. أَنْتِ مُمَرِّضَةٌ

c. You are a teacher. أَنْتِ مُعَلِّمَةٌ

d. You are generous. أَنْتِ كَرِيمَةٌ

e. You are obedient. أَنْتِ مُطِيعَةٌ

B:

الْجُمْلَةُ	مَعْنَاهَا
أَنَا مُمَرِّضٌ	I am a nurse (m.).
أَنَا مُمَرِّضَةٌ	I am a nurse (f.).

Explanation:

1. The independent personal pronoun أَنَا can refer to masculine or feminine nouns and adjectives.
2. In the first example أَنَا is masculine because it refers to مُمَرِّضٌ which is a masculine noun.
3. In the second example أَنَا is feminine because it refers to مُمَرِّضَةٌ which is a feminine noun.

Examples:

I am a journalist. أَنَا صَحَفِيٌّ

I am sincere. أَنَا مُخْلِصٌ

I am obedient.	أَنَا مُطِيعَةٌ
I am a doctor.	أَنَا طَبِيبَةٌ
I am a writer.	أَنَا كَاتِبَةٌ

Note:

مُذَكَّر		مُؤَنَّث	
I	أَنَا	I	أَنَا
You	أَنْتَ	You	أَنْتِ
He	هُوَ	She	هِيَ

New Vocabulary:

A child	طِفْلٌ	A lecturer	مُحَاضِرٌ
A poet	شَاعِرٌ	Pleasant	لَطِيفٌ
A journalist	صَحَفِيٌّ	A baker	خَبَّازٌ
A Muslim	مُسْلِمٌ	A woman	اِمْرَأَةٌ
An answer	جَوَابٌ	A page	صَفْحَةٌ

Exercise 8:

1. Translate the following into Arabic:

a.	He is humble.	f.	I am obedient (m.).
b.	You are hardworking (f.).	g.	He is a famous poet.
c.	She is a baker.	h.	You are excellent (f.).
d.	You are a merchant (m.).	i.	You are beautiful (m.).
e.	I am an engineer.	j.	She is pleasant.

2. Translate the following into English:

(١) هُوَ مُمْتَازٌ
(٢) أَنَا تَاجِرٌ
(٣) أَنَا مُسْلِمٌ مُطِيعٌ
(٤) أَنْتِ مُحَاضِرَةٌ مُتَوَاضِعَةٌ
(٥) هُوَ وَلَدٌ كَرِيمٌ
(٦) أَنْتِ مُمَرِّضَةٌ مُتَوَاضِعَةٌ
(٧) هِيَ مُخْلِصَةٌ
(٨) أَنْتَ صَحَفِيٌّ طَيِّبٌ
(٩) هِيَ إِمْرَأَةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ
(١٠) أَنْتَ أَبٌ مُجْتَهِدٌ

3. Choose the correct word in brackets:

(١) أَنَا (كَاتِبٌ / كِتَابٌ)
(٢) هُوَ (جَمِيلَةٌ / قَصِيرٌ)
(٣) أَنْتِ (مَدْرَسَةٌ / مُدَرِّسَةٌ)
(٤) هِيَ (حَزِينٌ / مُمْتَازَةٌ)
(٥) (هٰذَا / هٰذِهِ) شَاعِرٌ مَشْهُورٌ
(٦) هُوَ (جَامِعَةٌ / مُهَنْدِسٌ)
(٧) أَنْتِ (سَعِيدٌ / حَزِينَةٌ)
(٨) أَنَا (مَكْتَبَةٌ / نَشِيطَةٌ)
(٩) (أَنْتِ / أَنْتَ) ذَكِيٌّ
(١٠) (هُوَ / أَنَا) خَبَّازَةٌ

4. Correct the following sentences:

(١) هُوَ صَحَفِيَّةٌ
(٢) أَنْتَ مِمْرَضَةٌ
(٣) هِيَ إِمْرَأَةٌ مُتَوَاضِعٌ
(٤) هٰذِهِ طَالِبٌ مُخْلِصَةٌ
(٥) أَنَا كِتَابٌ
(٦) أَنْتِ عَامِلٌ
(٧) أَنَا جَامِعَةٌ
(٨) ذٰلِكَ بِنْتٌ
(٩) أَنْتَ مُعَلِّمَةٌ
(١٠) هِيَ مَكْتَبٌ

5. Make simple sentences with the following adjectives:

(١) قَدِيمَةٌ	(٦) مُطِيعٌ
(٢) مَكْسُورَةٌ	(٧) وَاسِعٌ
(٣) لَطِيفٌ	(٨) ذَكِيَّةٌ
(٤) نَظِيفٌ	(٩) مُجْتَهِدَةٌ
(٥) أَنِيسَةٌ	(١٠) طَوِيلٌ



The Preposition: ʿInda

حَرْفُ الْجَرِّ : عِنْدَ

The preposition عِنْدَ, which means "with" or "at", is used with attached pronouns = ضَمَائِرُ مُتَّصِلَةٌ to express the meaning of "to have". We will deal only with the singular attached pronouns.

مُؤَنَّثٌ		مُذَكَّرٌ	
I have	عِنْدِي	I have	عِنْدِي
You have	عِنْدَكِ	You have	عِنْدَكَ
It/She has	عِنْدَهَا	It/He has	عِنْدَهُ

Explanation:

1. In the first example the ي (yà) which is an attached pronoun (ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ) means "me". Since it is combined with the preposition عِنْدَ (with), the phrase means: "with me" or "I have".
2. In the second example the masculine كَ (ka) and the feminine كِ (ki) are attached to عِنْدَ to give the meaning "You have"(m.) عِنْدَكَ and "You have" (f.) عِنْدَكِ .

3. In the third example هُ (hu) is attached to عِنْدَ to give the meaning "He/It has" عِنْدَهُ. The هَا (hā) is attached to give the meaning "She/It has" عِنْدَهَا.
4. These expressions are used to convey possession, for example:

I have a book عِنْدِي كِتَابٌ

5. Note that the nouns which follow take the ḍammaṭāni and that they do not have to agree in gender with the attached pronoun.

Examples:

She has a beautiful cat. عِنْدَهَا هِرَّةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ

You have a big dog. عِنْدَكَ كَلْبٌ كَبِيرٌ

You (f.) have a dictionary. عِنْدَكِ قَامُوسٌ

He has a broken chair. عِنْدَهُ كُرْسِيٌّ مَكْسُورٌ

I have a plate. عِنْدِي صَحْنٌ

New Vocabulary:

A dictionary	قَامُوسٌ	A question	سُؤَالٌ
A plate	صَحْنٌ	A chair	كُرْسِيٌّ
A cup	فِنْجَانٌ	A letter	رِسَالَةٌ
A cat	هِرٌّ	A factory	مَصْنَعٌ
A professor	أُسْتَاذٌ	A dog	كَلْبٌ

Exercise 9:

1. Translate into Arabic:

a.	I have a new dictionary.	f.	He has a ruler.
b.	She has a clean room.	g.	It has a big window.
c.	You have a broken plate.	h.	You (f.) have a chair.
d.	He has a sincere teacher.	i.	I have a small cup.
e.	She has a sister.	j.	It has a wide door.

2. Translate into English:

(١) عِنْدَكَ قَامُوسٌ كَبِيرٌ
(٢) عِنْدَهَا سَيَّارَةٌ جَدِيدَةٌ
(٣) عِنْدَهُ دَرَّاجَةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ
(٤) عِنْدِي كِتَابٌ مُفِيدٌ
(٥) عِنْدَكَ مِمْسَحَةٌ
(٦) عِنْدِي كُرْسِيٌّ مَكْسُورٌ
(٧) عِنْدَكِ بَيْتٌ جَمِيلٌ
(٨) عِنْدَهَا نَافِذَةٌ صَغِيرَةٌ
(٩) عِنْدَهُ بَابٌ قَدِيمٌ
(١٠) عِنْدَكَ فِنْجَانٌ

3. Correct the following sentences:

(١) عِنْدَهُ كُرْسِيٌّ كَبِيرَةٌ
(٢) عِنْدَهَا مَصْنَعٌ جَدِيدَةٌ
(٣) تِلْكَ صَحْنٌ مَكْسُورٌ
(٤) أَنَا رِسَالَةٌ طَوِيلَةٌ
(٥) هٰذِهِ كَلْبٌ
(٦) اَلْحَافِلَةُ مَكْسُورٌ
(٧) هٰذَا هِرَّةٌ
(٨) هُوَ تَاجِرَةٌ مُخْلِصَةٌ
(٩) أَنْتَ قَامُوسٌ
(١٠) عِنْدَكَ سَفِينَةٌ صَغِيرٌ

4. Make sentences with the following words:

(١) مُمَرِّضٌ
(٢) هِرٌّ
(٦) أُخْتٌ
(٧) مُدِيرَةٌ

(٣) أُبٌّ (٨) أُسْتَاذٌ

(٤) وَلَدٌ (٩) عَامِلَةٌ

(٥) إِبْنَةٌ (١٠) طَالِبَةٌ

5. Vocalize the following sentences:

(١) تلك سفينة مكسورة (٦) عندك صحن كبير

(٢) عندي سيارة جميلة (٧) هذا فنجان

(٣) هذه طائرة صغيرة (٨) ذلك طالب ذكي

(٤) أنا ممرضة (٩) هو معلم مخلص

(٥) أنت رجل متواضع (١٠) أنت بنت كريمة



The Definite Article: Al

لَامُ اَلتَّعْرِيفِ : اَلْ

We have so far dealt with nouns that are indefinite, for example: وَلَدٌ (a boy). In English this is indicated by the article "a". In order to make "A boy" definite, we replace the "a" with the article "the"; we thus have "The boy". اَلْ (Al) in Arabic is equivalent to "the" in English.

Definite مَعْرِفَةٌ	Indefinite نَكِرَةٌ
اَلدَّرْسُ The lesson	دَرْسٌ A lesson
اَلْوَالِدُ The father	وَالِدٌ A father

Explanation:

1. In the example under the "indefinite" category, the last letter of the word has ḍammatāni (ٌ), which indicates in definiteness: دَرْسٌ (a lesson).

2. In the other example, the word "اَلدَّرْسُ" has been prefixed by the Al (اَلْ) to make it definite and to change its meaning

from "a lesson" to "The lesson".
Note that the noun loses one of its ḍammaṭāni (ـٌ becomes ـُ) and keeps one ḍamma (ـُ) only.

3. The term for "indefinite" in Arabic is "نَكِرَةٌ" and for "definite" is "مَعْرِفَةٌ".

Examples:

A lesson	دَرْسٌ	The lesson	اَلدَّرْسُ
A book	كِتَابٌ	The book	اَلْكِتَابُ
A letter	رِسَالَةٌ	The letter	اَلرِّسَالَةُ

Sun-letters and Moon-letters.

In Arabic, the alphabet is divided into the "Moon-letters" اَلْحُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ and the "Sun-letters" اَلْحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ. The fourteen Sun-letters are: ت ، ث ، د ، ذ ، ر ، ز ، س ، ش ، ص ، ض ، ط ، ظ ، ل ، ن
Note carefully in the actual pronunciation that when a noun or an adjective begins with a Sun-letter the "lam – ل " of the definite article "Al" is assimilated to the Sun-letter. The lam is thus not pronounced, but the Sun-letter which begins the word is doubled, taking a shadda: (ـّ).

New Vocabulary:

A letter	خِطَابٌ	A knife	سِكِّينٌ
A word	كَلِمَةٌ	A table	طَاوِلَةٌ
A subject	مَادَّةٌ	A hall	صَالَةٌ
A paper	وَرَقَةٌ	A language	لُغَةٌ
A margin	هَامِشٌ	A farmer	فَلَّاحٌ

Exercise 10:

1. Translate the following into Arabic:

a.	The house	f.	A table
b.	A chair	g.	The window
c.	The plate	h.	The wall
d.	A cup	i.	A spoon
e.	The door	j.	The knife

2. Translate the following into English:

(١) اَلْفِنْجَانُ (٦) وَالِدٌ

(٢) اَلْمِسْطَرَةُ (٧) اَلنَّافِذَةُ

(٣) طَبِيبَةٌ (٨) شَارِعٌ

(٤) أُمٌّ (٩) اَلْمِمْسَحَةُ

(٥) اَلسُّبُّورَةُ (١٠) سَيَّارَةٌ

3. Identify the words which start with a Moon-letter and those which start with a Sun-letter:

(١) اَللُّغَةُ (٦) اَلْهَامِشُ

(٢) اَلْأَعْبُ (٧) اَلصَّحْنُ

(٣) اَلْوَرَقَةُ (٨) اَلطَّائِرَةُ

(٤) اَلرَّجُلُ (٩) اَلْعَامِلَةُ

(٥) اَلشَّاعِرُ (١٠) اَلْهَدِيَّةُ

4. Make the following adjectives definite:

(١) سَعِيدٌ (٦) مُتَوَاضِعَةٌ

(٢) طَيِّبَةٌ (٧) مُطِيعَةٌ

(٣) كَرِيمٌ
(٤) حَزِينَةٌ
(٥) لَطِيفٌ
(٨) صَغِيرٌ
(٩) قَصِيرَةٌ
(١٠) ذَكِيٌّ

5. Vocalize the following words:

(١) الخباز
(٢) الكاتب
(٣) المدرّس
(٤) السفينة
(٥) الكلمة
(٦) الطباخ
(٧) الفلاح
(٨) الأستاذة
(٩) الحقيبة
(١٠) الهامش



The Adjectival Phrase: Definite

اَلتَّعْبِيرُ النَّعْتِيُّ لِلْمَعْرِفَةِ

The definite adjectival phrase, like the indefinite one, takes an adjective that must agree with the noun. Therefore, if the noun is definite, the adjective which describes it must also be definite.

Def. Adj. Phrase	Ind. Adj. Phrase
اَلْوَالِدُ الْمُخْلِصُ	وَالِدٌ مُخْلِصٌ
The sincere father	A sincere father
اَلْوَالِدَةُ الْمُخْلِصَةُ	وَالِدَةٌ مُخْلِصَةٌ
The sincere mother	A sincere mother

Explanation:

1. Under the column "Ind. Adj. Phrase", the indefinite phrases is indicated by the ḍammatāni on the last letter of the noun and of its adjective.
2. Under the column "Def. Adj. Phrase", the noun as well as its adjective take the definite article "Al".

Examples:

The strong boy	اَلْوَلَدُ الْقَوِيُّ
The obedient girl	اَلْبِنْتُ الْمُطِيعَةُ
The beautiful park	اَلْبُسْتَانُ الْجَمِيلُ
The small garden	اَلْحَدِيقَةُ الصَّغِيرَةُ
The heavy parcel	اَلطَّرْدُ الثَّقِيلُ
The light letter	اَلرِّسَالَةُ الْخَفِيفَةُ

New Vocabulary:

A spoon	مِلْعَقَةٌ	A market	سُوقٌ
A parcel	طَرْدٌ	A fork	شَوْكَةٌ
A park	بُسْتَانٌ	A garden	حَدِيقَةٌ
Strong	قَوِيٌّ	Weak	ضَعِيفٌ
Light	خَفِيفٌ	Heavy	ثَقِيلٌ

Exercise 11:

1. Translate the following phrases into Arabic:
 a. The narrow street
 b. A new garden
 c. The useful book
 d. A friendly father
 e. The broken car
 f. A clever pupil (f.).
 g. The excellent teacher
 h. A sad boy
 i. The big park
 j. A beautiful cat

2. Translate the following phrases into English:

(١) مُعَلِّمٌ لَطِيفٌ
(٢) اَلْبُسْتَانُ الْجَمِيلُ
(٣) حِطَابٌ طَوِيلٌ
(٤) اَلْمُهَنْدِسُ الْمُجْتَهِدُ
(٥) أُسْتَاذٌ ذَكِيٌّ
(٦) مِلْعَقَةٌ ثَقِيلَةٌ
(٧) اَلْمَدْرَسَةُ الْمَشْهُورَةُ
(٨) اَلسُّوقُ الْجَدِيدَةُ
(٩) اَلصَّالَةُ الصَّغِيرَةُ
(١٠) مُدَرِّسَةٌ مُخْلِصَةٌ

3. Make the following phrases definite:

(١) اِبْنٌ كَرِيمٌ
(٢) خَبَّازٌ نَشِيطٌ
(٣) شَوْكَةٌ خَفِيفَةٌ
(٤) عَامِلٌ قَوِيٌّ
(٥) طِفْلٌ ضَعِيفٌ
(٦) مُدِيرٌ مُتَوَاضِعٌ
(٧) مَكْتَبَةٌ مُفِيدَةٌ
(٨) طَبِيبٌ مُخْلِصٌ
(٩) رِسَالَةٌ قَصِيرَةٌ
(١٠) وَالِدَةٌ سَعِيدَةٌ

4. Complete the phrases by using suitable adjectives:

(١) اَلْجِدَارُ
(٢) مِمْسَحَةٌ
(٣) اَلصَّحْنُ
(٤) أُخٌ
(٥) اَلْأُخْتُ
(٦) اَلْمُمَرِّضَةُ
(٧) سَفِينَةٌ
(٨) اَلْفِنْجَانُ
(٩) اَلْمَرْأَةُ
(١٠) شَاعِرٌ

5. Choose the correct adjective in brackets:

(١) اَلْكَاتِبُ (اَلْجَدِيدُ / مُفِيدَةٌ)
(٢) اَلشَّارِعُ (اَلْضَّيِّقُ / اَلْوَاسِعَةُ)
(٣) اَلصَّالَةُ (كَبِيرٌ / اَلصَّغِيرَةُ)
(٤) اَلْوَلَدُ (قَوِيٌّ / اَلضَّعِيفُ)
(٥) اَلْمِسْطَرَةُ (اَلْمُفِيدَةُ / نَظِيفٌ)
(٦) اَلطَّرْدُ (اَلثَّقِيلَةُ / اَلْخَفِيفُ)
(٧) اَلْبُسْتَانُ (اَلْقَدِيمُ / اَلْجَدِيدَةُ)
(٨) اَلْحَدِيقَةُ (اَلْقَبِيحُ / اَلْجَمِيلَةُ)
(٩) اَلطَّبَّاخُ (اَلطَّوِيلُ / اَلْقَصِيرَةُ)
(١٠) اَلْبِنْتُ (نَشِيطٌ / اَلنَّشِيطَةُ)



The Nominal Sentence

اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْإِسْمِيَّةُ

The nominal sentence consists of a subject, (مُبْتَدَأ), and a predicate (خَبَرٌ). It is called a "nominal sentence" because it always begins with a noun.

اَلتَّعْبِيرُ النَّعْتِيُّ لِلنَّكِرَةِ Ind. Adj. Phrase	اَلتَّعْبِيرُ النَّعْتِيُّ لِلْمَعْرِفَةِ Def. Adj. Phrase	اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْاِسْمِيَّةُ Nom. Sentence
دَرْسٌ صَعْبٌ 1. A difficult lesson	اَلدَّرْسُ الصَّعْبُ 2. The difficult lesson	اَلدَّرْسُ صَعْبٌ 3. The lesson is difficult.

Explanation:

1. The first example is an indefinite adjectival phrase where the adjective agrees with the noun it describes in gender (i.e., both are masculine) and indefinite.
2. In the second example, both the noun and the adjective have the definite article اَلْ (Al).
3. The last example is a nominal sentence. Its noun" اَلدَّرْسُ ", which is" اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ " (the subject), is definite and اَلْخَبَرُ (the predicate) is indefinite, i.e., " صَعْبٌ " and it, therefore, ends in ḍammatāni. The predicate must agree with its subject in

gender, but will not take the "Al". If it takes the "Al", then it will change the nominal sentence into a definite adjective phrase as happens in the second example, thereby changing the meaning.

4. The verbs "is" and "are" are usually not translated into Arabic although their meanings are implied in the sentence.

Examples:

The street is dirty.	اَلشَّارِعُ وَسِخٌ
The room is clean.	اَلْغُرْفَةُ نَظِيفَةٌ
The teacher is rich.	اَلْمُدَرِّسُ غَنِيٌّ
The student is poor.	اَلطَّالِبُ فَقِيرٌ
The accountant is stingy.	اَلْمُحَاسِبُ بَخِيلٌ

New Vocabulary:

Difficult	صَعْبٌ	Easy	سَهْلٌ
Rich	غَنِيٌّ	Poor	فَقِيرٌ
Dirty	وَسِخٌ	Inactive	خَامِلٌ
Stingy	بَخِيلٌ	An accountant	مُحَاسِبٌ
A river	نَهْرٌ	A village	قَرْيَةٌ

Exercise 12:

1. Translate the following sentences into Arabic:
 a. The rector is generous.
 b. The university is clean.

c. The student is inactive.
d. The accountant(f.) is rich.
e. The library is useful.
f. The book is new.
g. The teacher is poor.
h. The city is beautiful.
i. The river is dirty.
j. The village is small.

2. Translate the following into English:

(١) اَلسَّاعَةُ جَمِيلَةٌ
(٢) اَلْمَكْتَبُ مَكْسُورٌ
(٣) اَلْوَالِدُ حَزِينٌ
(٤) اَلْقَرْيَةُ كَبِيرَةٌ
(٥) اَلسَّيَّارَةُ صَغِيرَةٌ
(٦) اَلْوَالِدَةُ مُتَوَاضِعَةٌ
(٧) اَلْبِنْتُ أَنِيسَةٌ
(٨) اَلنَّهْرُ وَاسِعٌ
(٩) اَلْمَدِينَةُ غَنِيَّةٌ
(١٠) اَلْمُحَاسِبَةُ بَخِيلَةٌ

3. Translate the following into Arabic and state whether they are definite or indefinite phrases or nominal sentences:

a. A stingy wife
b. The river is long.
c. A poor girl
d. The inactive father
e. The teacher is sad.
f. The door is broken.
g. The beautiful city
h. A rich boy
i. The house is clean.
j. The wide river

4. Change the following adjectival phrases into nominal sentences:

(١) اَلْوَالِدُ الْغَنِيُّ
(٢) سَبُّورَةٌ وَسِخَةٌ
(٣) اَلْمِنْضَدَةُ الْمَكْسُورَةُ
(٤) قَرْيَةٌ فَقِيرَةٌ
(٥) اَلْمِمْسَحَةُ النَّظِيفَةُ
(٦) رَجُلٌ بَخِيلٌ
(٧) اَلْخَرِيطَةُ الْقَدِيمَةُ
(٨) جَامِعَةٌ مَشْهُورَةٌ
(٩) اَلدَّرَّاجَةُ الْجَدِيدَةُ
(١٠) اَلْكَلْبُ الْخَامِلُ

5. Pair the subjects in group A with suitable predicates in group B:

A	B
اَلْبَيْتُ	فَقِيرَةٌ
اَلطَّائِرَةُ	مُفِيدٌ
اَلْمَكْتَبُ	غَنِيٌّ
اَلْكَاتِبُ	خَفِيفٌ
اَلطَّرْدُ	ثَقِيلَةٌ
اَلْقَرْيَةُ	مَكْسُورَةٌ
اَلنَّهْرُ	نَشِيطَةٌ
اَلْمِلْعَقَةُ	بَخِيلٌ
اَلْمُعَلِّمَةُ	كَبِيرٌ
اَلْمُدِيرُ	وَاسِعٌ
اللُّغَةُ	صَعْبَةٌ



The Interrogative Particles: Man and Ma

أَدَوَاتُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ : مَنْ + مَا

The interrogative particles are used for asking questions. مَنْ means "who" and مَا means "what".

The Question and the Answer	اَلسُّؤَالُ وَ الْجَوَابُ
1. Who is this (m.)?	مَنْ هٰذَا ؟
This is Sami.	هٰذَا سَامِي
Who is he?	مَنْ هُوَ ؟
He is Muhammad.	هُوَ مُحَمَّدٌ
Who is this (f.)?	مَنْ هٰذِهِ ؟
This is Salwa.	هٰذِهِ سَلْوَى
Who is she?	مَنْ هِيَ ؟
She is Mumtaza.	هِيَ مُمْتَازَةُ
2. What is this (m.)?	مَا هٰذَا ؟
This is a shop.	هٰذَا دُكَّانٌ
What is this (f.)?	مَا هٰذِهِ ؟
This is a bus.	هٰذِهِ حَافِلَةٌ

Explanation:

1. The interrogative particle مَنْ (who) refers to persons only. In the first group of examples, the question is asked about the name of a person.
 The answer is given in the form of a "nominal sentence". The subject is "this" اِسْمُ الْاِشَارَةِ (a demonstrative pronoun) or "he" ضَمِيرٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ (an independent pronoun), and their predicates are "Sami" or "Muhammad" respectively.
2. The interrogative particle مَا (what) used in the second group refers to things only. The answer is also in the form of a "جُمْلَةٌ اِسْمِيَّةٌ". For example: the subject هٰذَا (this) has the word "فُنْدُقٌ" as its predicate which is indefinite.

Examples:

1. a. Who is this? مَنْ هٰذَا ؟
 This is Ihsan. هٰذَا إِحْسَانٌ
 b. Who is he? مَنْ هُوَ ؟
 He is Ali. هُوَ عَلِيٌّ
 c. Who is this (f.)? مَنْ هٰذِهِ ؟
 This is Rashida. هٰذِهِ رَشِيدَةُ
 d. Who is she? مَنْ هِيَ ؟
 She is Khadija. هِيَ خَدِيجَةُ
2. a. What is this (m.)? مَا هٰذَا ؟
 This is a hotel. هٰذَا فُنْدُقٌ
 b. What is this (f.)? مَا هٰذِهِ ؟
 This is an island. هٰذِهِ جَزِيرَةٌ

3. a. What is your (m.) profession? مَا مِهْنَتُكَ ؟

I am a barber. أَنَا حَلَّاقٌ

b. What is your (f.) profession? مَا مِهْنَتُكِ ؟

I am a baker. أَنَا خَبَّازَةٌ

New Vocabulary:

A translator	مُتَرْجِمٌ	A driver	سَائِقٌ
A barber	حَلَّاقٌ	A shop	دُكَّانٌ
A carpenter	نَجَّارٌ	An island	جَزِيرَةٌ
A hotel	فُنْدُقٌ	A key	مِفْتَاحٌ
An apartment	شِقَّةٌ	A newspaper	جَرِيدَةٌ

Exercise 13:

1. Translate the following into Arabic:
 a. Who is he? He is Taieb.
 b. What is this? This is a broken pen.
 c. Who is this? This is Yasin.
 d. Who is she? She is Fatima.
 e. Who is he? He is the principal, Yusuf.
 f. What is it? It is a beautiful hotel.
 g. Who is this? This is Ibrahim.
 h. What is this? This is a newspaper.
 i. What is it? It is an institute.
 j. Who is she? She is a teacher, Salma.

2. Translate into English:

(١) مَنْ هُوَ ؟ هُوَ إِبْرَاهِيمُ
(٢) مَا هٰذَا ؟ هٰذَا دَفْتَرٌ
(٣) مَا هٰذِهِ ؟ هٰذِهِ هَدِيَّةٌ
(٤) مَنْ ذٰلِكَ ؟ ذٰلِكَ عَلِيٌّ
(٥) أَنَا نَجَّارٌ
(٦) عِنْدَكِ قَلَمٌ
(٧) مَنْ هٰذِهِ ؟ هٰذِهِ فَاطِمَةُ
(٨) أَنْتَ مُتَرْجِمٌ
(٩) تِلْكَ سَبُّورَةٌ نَظِيفَةٌ
(١٠) هِيَ خَلَّاقَةٌ

3. Answer the following questions:

(١) مَا هٰذَا ؟
(٢) مَنْ أَنْتَ ؟
(٣) مَا هٰذِهِ ؟
(٤) مَنْ تِلْكَ ؟
(٥) مَا تِلْكَ ؟
(٦) مَنْ هُوَ ؟
(٧) مَنْ أَنْتِ ؟
(٨) مَا ذٰلِكَ ؟
(٩) مَنْ هِيَ ؟
(١٠) مَنْ هٰذِهِ ؟

4. Give the opposite of the following words.

(١) ضَعِيفَةٌ
(٢) بَخِيلٌ
(٣) خَامِلَةٌ
(٤) خَفِيفَةٌ
(٥) حَزِينَةٌ
(٦) طَوِيلٌ
(٧) فَقِيرَةٌ
(٨) كَبِيرٌ
(٩) سَهْلَةٌ
(١٠) ضَيِّقٌ

5. Vocalize:

(١) هذه ملعقة صغيرة
(٢) هذا فنجان جديد
(٣) من هي ؟ هي مريم
(٤) أنت والدة مخلصة
(٥) ما هذه ؟ هذه سيّارة
(٦) تلك شوكة خفيفة
(٧) ذلك صحن مكسور
(٨) ما هذا ؟ هذا كتاب
(٩) أنت خبّاز مجتهد
(١٠) ما هذا ؟ هذا خطاب قصير



The Interrogative Particle: Hal

أَدَاةُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ : هَلْ

In order to construct simple interrogative sentences, i.e. questions, we start with the particles هَلْ (hal) or أَ (a). This lesson will be confined to the use of هَلْ only.

The Question and the Answer	السُّؤَالُ وَ الْجَوَابُ
1. Is he a writer?	هَلْ هُوَ كَاتِبٌ ؟
Yes, he is a writer.	نَعَمْ ، هُوَ كَاتِبٌ
2. Is this a magazine?	هَلْ هَذِهِ مَجَلَّةٌ ؟
Yes, this is a magazine.	نَعَمْ ، هَذِهِ مَجَلَّةٌ
3. Are you a cook?	هَلْ أَنْتِ طَبَّاخَةٌ ؟
No, I am a baker.	لَا ، أَنَا خَبَّازَةٌ
4. Is this a school?	هَلْ هَذِهِ مَدْرَسَةٌ ؟
No, this is a university.	لَا ، هَذِهِ جَامِعَةٌ

Explanation:

1. "هَلْ" is the particle used to introduce an interrogative sentence.
2. Note that the particle is written first, and that the "؟" (question mark) in Arabic is the reverse of the question mark in English.
3. The answer to the first question is affirmative. It is expressed by the particle نَعَمْ (Yes).
4. The answers to the third and fourth questions are negative and are expressed by the particle لَا (No).
5. Thus, answers to "Hal" must start with نَعَمْ (Yes) or لَا (No).

Examples:

1. **Affirmative:**

a.	Are you a student?	هَلْ أَنْتَ طَالِبٌ ؟
	Yes, I am a student.	نَعَمْ ، أَنَا طَالِبٌ
b.	Is he a friendly man?	هَلْ هُوَ رَجُلٌ أَنِيسٌ ؟
	Yes, he is a friendly man.	نَعَمْ ، هُوَ رَجُلٌ أَنِيسٌ
c.	Is this an institute?	هَلْ هٰذَا مَعْهَدٌ ؟
	Yes, this is an institute.	نَعَمْ ، هٰذَا مَعْهَدٌ
d.	Is this a big island?	هَلْ هٰذِهِ جَزِيرَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ ؟
	Yes, this is a big island.	نَعَمْ ، هٰذِهِ جَزِيرَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ
e.	Is the parcel heavy?	هَلِ الطَّرْدُ ثَقِيلٌ ؟
	Yes, the parcel is heavy.	نَعَمْ ، اَلطَّرْدُ ثَقِيلٌ

2. **Negative:**

a.	Are you rich?	هَلْ أَنْتَ غَنِيٌّ ؟
	No, I am poor.	لَا ، أَنَا فَقِيرٌ
b.	Is the letter heavy?	هَلِ الرِّسَالَةُ ثَقِيلَةٌ ؟
	No, the letter is light.	لَا ، اَلرِّسَالَةُ خَفِيفَةٌ
c.	Is he weak?	هَلْ هُوَ ضَعِيفٌ ؟
	No, he is strong.	لَا ، هُوَ قَوِيٌّ
d.	Is this a village?	هَلْ هَذِهِ قَرْيَةٌ ؟
	No, this is a city.	لَا ، هَذِهِ مَدِينَةٌ
e.	Is she a dull pupil?	هَلْ هِيَ تِلْمِيذَةٌ غَبِيَّةٌ ؟
	No, she is a clever pupil.	لَا ، هِيَ تِلْمِيذَةٌ ذَكِيَّةٌ

Note: If the interrogative particle is followed by a definite noun, then the sukun on the " لْ " of the interrogative particle " هَلْ " is dropped and a "helping vowel" replaces it, which is in this case a "kasra (لِ)". See examples 1. e and 2. b.

New Vocabulary:

A ring	خَاتِمٌ	A skirt	تَنُّورَةٌ
Dull/Stupid	غَبِيٌّ	A shirt	قَمِيصٌ
Cheap	رَخِيصٌ	A dress	فُسْتَانٌ
A file	مِلَفٌّ	A magazine	مَجَلَّةٌ
Coming	قَادِمٌ	Going	ذَاهِبٌ

Exercise 14:

1. Translate the following into Arabic:
 a. Is he an excellent teacher? Yes, he is an excellent teacher.
 b. Is that a new skirt? No, that is an old skirt.
 c. Are you a principal? No, I am a professor.
 d. Is this a cheap pen? Yes, this is a cheap pen.
 e. Is she sad? Yes, she is sad.
 f. Is the chair heavy? No, the chair is light.
 g. Is this a library? Yes, this is a library.
 h. Are you a barber? No, I am a carpenter.
 i. Is the man generous? No, the man is stingy.
 j. Is he dull? Yes, he is dull.

2. Translate the following into English:

(١) هَلْ هُوَ طِفْلٌ مُخْلِصٌ ؟
(٢) نَعَمْ ، هِيَ اِمْرَأَةٌ لَطِيفَةٌ
(٣) لَا ، اَلْمِسْطَرَةُ مَكْسُورَةٌ
(٤) هَلْ هٰذَا بُسْتَانٌ جَمِيلٌ ؟
(٥) هٰذِهِ حَدِيقَةٌ كَبِيرَةٌ
(٦) لَا ، اَلتَّنُّورَةُ قَبِيحَةٌ
(٧) هَلْ تِلْكَ سَفِينَةٌ ؟
(٨) نَعَمْ ، اَلسَّيَّارَةُ رَخِيصَةٌ
(٩) لَا ، أَنَا سَعِيدَةٌ
(١٠) نَعَمْ ، هٰذِهِ سُورَةٌ لَطِيفَةٌ

3. Answer the following questions in the affirmative:

(١) هَلْ هٰذَا جِدَارٌ نَظِيفٌ ؟
(٢) هَلِ الْبَابُ مَكْسُورٌ ؟
(٣) هَلْ هٰذَا دَرْسٌ سَهْلٌ ؟
(٤) هَلْ هٰذِهِ سَيَّارَةٌ رَخِيصَةٌ ؟
(٥) هَلْ تِلْكَ سَفِينَةٌ مَكْسُورَةٌ ؟
(٦) هَلْ ذٰلِكَ بَيْتٌ كَبِيرٌ ؟
(٧) هَلْ هَذَا كُرْسِيٌّ ؟
(٨) هَلِ الْوَالِدُ كَرِيمٌ ؟
(٩) هَلِ الدَّرَّاجَةُ صَغِيرَةٌ ؟
(١٠) هَلْ هٰذِهِ طَاوِلَةٌ ؟

4. Answer the following questions in the negative:

(١) هَلِ الشَّارِعُ وَاسِعٌ ؟
(٢) هَلْ هٰذَا اِبْنٌ مُطِيعٌ ؟
(٣) هَلْ ذٰلِكَ مُعَلِّمٌ نَشِيطٌ ؟
(٤) هَلْ هَذَا دَرْسٌ صَعْبٌ ؟
(٥) هَلْ هٰذِهِ بِنْتٌ حَزِينَةٌ ؟
(٦) هَلْ أَنْتِ فَقِيرَةٌ ؟
(٧) هَلْ هِيَ مُدَرِّسَةٌ خَامِلَةٌ ؟
(٨) هَلْ أَنْتَ وَالِدٌ غَنِيٌّ ؟
(٩) هَلْ تِلْكَ بِنْتٌ قَوِيَّةٌ ؟
(١٠) هَلْ أَنْتَ ضَعِيفٌ ؟

5. Vocalize the following:

(١) هل الكتاب مفيد ؟
(٢) ذلك فستان جميل
(٣) هل هذه غرفة واسعة ؟
(٤) هل أنت مسلمة ؟
(٥) هذه أستاذة لطيفة
(٦) هذا بيت جميل
(٧) تلك تنّورة قصيرة
(٨) نعم ، هو طالب ذكيّ
(٩) لا ، أنا ممرّض
(١٠) نعم ، الرجل بخيل



The Attached Pronouns

اَلضَّمَائِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ

The attached pronouns, when attached to nouns, express possession as in English, e.g. "My book". This lesson deals with the singular forms of the possessive pronouns only.

اَلْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
A book	كِتَابٌ
The book	اَلْكِتَابُ
My book	كِتَابِي
Your (m.) book	كِتَابُكَ
Your (f.) book	كِتَابُكِ
His book	كِتَابُهُ
Her book	كِتَابُهَا

Explanation:

1. When an indefinite noun,e.g. " كِتَابٌ " is made definite, then it loses a ḍamma and an "Al" is prefixed to it,e.g. " اَلْكِتَابُ ".
2. When the noun " كِتَابٌ " has an attached pronoun, it is always definite. In other words, the possessive/attached pronoun makes it definite: " كِتَابِي ", " كِتَابُكَ ", " كِتَابُكِ ", " كِتَابُهُ " and " كِتَابُهَا ".
3. That is why nouns never take the definite article " اَلْ " when they are combined with these pronouns.
4. Note that the form of the attached pronouns differs greatly from the detached pronouns.

Pronouns			
Attached		Detached	
Mine	ي	I	أَنَا
Your (m.)	كَ	You (m.)	أَنْتَ
Your (f.)	كِ	You (f.)	أَنْتِ
His	هُ	He	هُوَ
Her	هَا	She	هِيَ

5. In the example " اَلْمِلْعَقَةُ نَظِيفَةٌ " (the spoon is clean), the subject ends with a ṭā' marbūṭa. When an attached pronoun is suffixed to it, the ṭā' marbūṭa becomes a ṭā' maftūḥa, i.e. an open ṭā' " مِلْعَقَتُهُ نَظِيفَةٌ " (His spoon is clean).

6. The example " مِلْعَقَتُهُ نَظِيفَةٌ " is a nominal sentence where the subject has become definite because of the attached pronoun " ـهُ " and the predicate " نَظِيفَةٌ " remains indefinite.
7. However, if the word " نَظِيفَةٌ " (clean) is made definite by adding the " اَلْ " (Al), then the sentence will be changed to a definite phrase:

a. The spoon is clean.	اَلْمِلْعَقَةُ نَظِيفَةٌ
b. His spoon is clean.	مِلْعَقَتُهُ نَظِيفَةٌ
c. His clean spoon	مِلْعَقَتُهُ اَلنَّظِيفَةُ

Examples:

1. Used on its own:

a. Your (m.) bag	حَقِيبَتُكَ
b. Her pen	قَلَمُهَا
c. His note-book	دَفْتَرُهُ
d. My teacher	مُعَلِّمِي
e. Your (f.) principal	مُدِيرُكِ

2. Used with adjectives:

a. His new glass	كُوبُهُ اَلْجَدِيدُ
b. Her big cup	فِنْجَانُهَا اَلْكَبِيرُ
c. Your (m.) clean kitchen	مَطْبَخُكَ اَلنَّظِيفُ

d. Your (f.) heavy pot — قِدْرُكِ الثَّقِيلُ

e. My old fridge — ثَلَّاجَتِي الْقَدِيمَةُ

3. Used in a sentence:

a. My watch is beautiful. — سَاعَتِي جَمِيلَةٌ

b. Your (m.) plate is broken. — صَحْنُكَ مَكْسُورٌ

c. Your (f.) fork is clean. — شَوْكَتُكِ نَظِيفَةٌ

d. His car is old. — سَيَّارَتُهُ قَدِيمَةٌ

e. Her oven is small. — فُرْنُهَا صَغِيرٌ

New Vocabulary:

A restaurant	مَطْعَمٌ	An oven	فُرْنٌ
A pot	قِدْرٌ	A fridge	ثَلَّاجَةٌ
A jug	إِبْرِيقٌ	A glass	كُوبٌ
A drawer	دُرْجٌ	A window	شُبَّاكٌ
A company	شَرِكَةٌ	A cupboard	دُولَابٌ

Exercise 15:

1. Translate into Arabic:

a.	Your (f.) library	f.	His mother is friendly.
b.	Her clean car	g.	My broken chair
c.	Your teacher is excellent.	h.	Her knife
d.	My son is sincere.	i.	His cheap house
e.	Her principal is polite.	j.	Your oven

2. Translate into English:

(١) دَرْسُهُ سَهْلٌ

(٢) مُدَرِّسَتِي مُهَذَّبَةٌ

(٣) اِبْرِيقُهُ نَظِيفٌ

(٤) مِنْضَدَتُهَا الصَّغِيرَةُ

(٥) طَالِبَتُكِ ذَكِيَّةٌ

(٦) ثَوْرَتُهَا طَوِيلَةٌ

(٧) بُسْتَانُكَ جَمِيلٌ

(٨) أُخْتِي الْمُتَوَاضِعَةُ

(٩) كُوبُكِ الْمَكْسُورُ

(١٠) شُبَّاكِي الْضَّيِّقُ

3. Change the following phrases into nominal sentences:

(١) اَلْمُعَلِّمُ الْجَدِيدُ

(٢) تِلْمِيذَتُهُ الْمُجْتَهِدَةُ

(٣) وَالِدُكِ الْمُخْلِصُ

(٤) ثَلَّاجَةٌ خَفِيفَةٌ

(٥) حَقِيبَتِي الصَّغِيرَةُ

(٦) أُسْتَاذَتُهَا الْكَرِيمَةُ

(٧) غُرْفَتُكَ الضَّيِّقَةُ

(٨) قِدْرٌ ثَقِيلٌ

(٩) اَلشَّرِكَةُ الْقَدِيمَةُ

(١٠) اَلْحَافِلَةُ النَّظِيفَةُ

4. Choose the correct word and make a phrase or a sentence:

(١) وَالِدَتُهَا (سَعِيدٌ / سَعِيدَةٌ)

(٢) دَرْسُكَ (سَهْلٌ / اَلصَّعْبَةُ)

(٣) بَيْتُكَ (جَمِيلَةٌ / جَمِيلٌ)

(٦) خَادِمُهُ (اَلْمُطِيعُ / مُطِيعَةٌ)

(٧) أَبِي (حَزِينَةٌ / اَلْحَزِينُ)

(٨) هٰذَا (خِطَابُكِ / رِسَالَتُكِ)

(٤) (ذٰلِكَ / تِلْكَ) كِتَابُهَا (٩) (عِنْدَهُ / هٰذِهِ) سِكِّينٌ

(٥) (مَا / مَنْ) أُمُّهُ ؟ (١٠) (هٰذَا / هٰذِهِ) مِسْطَرَتِي

5. Correct the mistakes in the following phrases and sentences:

(١) اِبْنُهَا مُطِيعُهَا (٦) وَالِدِي اَلْمُخْلِصَةُ

(٢) قَلَمُكَ اَلْجَدِيدَةُ (٧) قَوِيٌّ اَلطِّفْلُ

(٣) اَلنَّجَّارُ اَلضَّعِيفَةُ (٨) اَلشَّوْكَتُكِ اَلرَّخِيصَةُ

(٤) اَلْحَزِينُ أُسْتَاذٌ (٩) هٰذَا رِسَالَتِي اَلطَّوِيلَةُ

(٥) تِلْكَ اَلنَّافِذَتُهُ (١٠) هَلْ عِنْدَهَا سَيَّارَةٌ قَدِيمٌ ؟



The Interrogative Particle: Kayfa

أَدَاةُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ : كَيْفَ

The interrogative particle كَيْفَ is used to ask the question "How?". The interrogative particle مَا will also be referred to in this chapter.

	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ	اَلْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةُ
1.	كَيْفَ أَنْتَ / كَيْفَ حَالُكَ ؟	How are you?
	كَيْفَ هُوَ / كَيْفَ حَالُهُ ؟	How is he?
2.	كَيْفَ صِحَّتُكِ ؟	How is your health?
	كَيْفَ صِحَّتُهَا ؟	How is her health?
3.	كَيْفَ وَالِدَتُكَ ؟	How is your mother?
	وَالِدَتِي طَيِّبَةٌ	My mother is fine.

Explanation:

1. In the first two examples, the particle "kayfa" is used first with the independent pronoun to express a question.
2. Then the word "حَالٌ" ("condition") is used. It is combined with an attached pronoun to express "your/his /her condition" = حَالُكَ / حَالُهُ / حَالُهَا .
3. The word " صِحَّةٌ " (health) is used in the third group to express "your/his/her health"= صِحَّتُكَ / صِحَّتُهُ / صِحَّتُهَا . To this noun a pronoun has been attached.
4. The words " حَالٌ / صِحَّةٌ " may be replaced by other nouns to express different types of questions:

How is your mother?	كَيْفَ أُمُّكَ ؟
My mother is fine.	أُمِّي طَيِّبَةٌ
or	أَوْ
She is fine.	هِيَ طَيِّبَةٌ

5. The word " طَيِّبٌ " (fine) may be replaced by the word " خَيْرٌ " (well). Note that this word has a preposition " بِ " (in/with) attached to it بِخَيْرٍ .

How is your family?	كَيْفَ أُسْرَتُكَ ؟
My family is well.	أُسْرَتِي بِخَيْرٍ
How is your son?	كَيْفَ ابْنُكَ ؟
My son is fine.	ابْنِي طَيِّبٌ

6. The word " طَيِّبٌ " (fine) must agree in gender with the noun attached to the pronoun.
But the word " خَيْرٌ " (well) which has the preposition " بِ " attached to it, will not change its gender.

Examples:

1. Use of كَيْفَ

a.	How are you?	كَيْفَ أَنْتَ ؟
	I am fine.	أَنَا طَيِّبٌ
	How is he?	كَيْفَ هُوَ ؟
	He is fine.	هُوَ بِخَيْرٍ
	How is she?	كَيْفَ هِيَ ؟
	She is fine.	هِيَ طَيِّبَةٌ
b.	How is your health?	كَيْفَ صِحَّتُكَ ؟
	My health is fine.	صِحَّتِي طَيِّبَةٌ
	How is his health?	كَيْفَ صِحَّتُهُ ؟
	His health is fine.	صِحَّتُهُ طَيِّبَةٌ
	How is her health?	كَيْفَ صِحَّتُهَا ؟
	Her health is fine.	صِحَّتُهَا طَيِّبَةٌ

2. Use of مَا
The interrogative particle مَا is also used with nouns which are attached to pronouns.

a.	What is your name?	مَا اسْمُكَ ؟
	My name is Hasan.	اِسْمِي حَسَنٌ
	What is her name?	مَا اسْمُهَا ؟

	Her name is Hasina.	اِسْمُهَا حَسِينَةُ
b.	What is his occupation?	مَا مِهْنَتُهُ ؟
	He is an engineer.	هُوَ مُهَنْدِسٌ
	What is your occupation?	مَا مِهْنَتُكَ ؟
	I am a photographer.	أَنَا مُصَوِّرٌ

New Vocabulary:

Health	صِحَّةٌ	Condition	حَالٌ
In, by	بِ	Occupation	مِهْنَةٌ
A name	اِسْمٌ	A photographer	مُصَوِّرٌ
A family	أُسْرَةٌ	A friend	صَدِيقٌ
Well	خَيْرٌ	A tailor	خَيَّاطٌ

Exercise 16:

1. Translate the following sentences into Arabic:

a.	What is his name?	f.	Who is she?
a.	His name is Muhammad.	f.	She is Khadija.
b.	How are you (f.)?	g.	Is he an engineer?
b.	I am fine.	g.	Yes, he is an engineer.
c.	How is her health?	h.	How is her family?
c.	She is well.	h.	Her family is well.
d.	What is his occupation?	i.	Is she Fatima?
d.	He is a nurse.	i.	No, she is Mumtaza.
e.	How is she?	j.	Is he a doctor?
e.	She is well.	j.	No, he is a professor.

2. Translate the following sentences into English:

(١) كَيْفَ حَالُهَا ؟ هِيَ بِخَيْرٍ
(٢) مَنْ أَنْتَ ؟ أَنَا يَاسِينُ
(٣) مَا مِهْنَتُكَ ؟ أَنَا سَائِقٌ
(٤) كَيْفَ صِحَّتُكِ ؟ صِحَّتِي بِخَيْرٍ
(٥) هَلْ اِسْمُهَا فَاطِمَةُ ؟
(٦) مَا اِسْمُهُ ؟ اِسْمُهُ مُحَمَّدٌ
(٧) هَلْ أَنْتِ خَيَّاطَةٌ ؟
(٨) مَا هٰذِهِ ؟ هٰذِهِ حَافِلَةٌ
(٩) هَلْ هٰذَا دُكَّانٌ ؟ لَا ، هٰذَا فُنْدُقٌ
(١٠) كَيْفَ الْأُسْرَةُ؟ اَلْأُسْرَةُ طَيِّبَةٌ

3. Answer the following questions in Arabic:

(١) هَلْ هٰذِهِ شَقَّةٌ ؟
(٢) مَنْ هٰذِهِ ؟
(٣) مَا مِهْنَتُكَ ؟
(٤) كَيْفَ هِيَ ؟
(٥) هَلْ عِنْدَكِ دَرَّاجَةٌ ؟
(٦) كَيْفَ حَالُهَا ؟
(٧) مَا اسْمُهُ ؟
(٨) هَلْ ذٰلِكَ قَمِيصٌ جَدِيدٌ ؟
(٩) كَيْفَ أُسْرَتُكَ ؟
(١٠) مَا اسْمُكِ ؟

4. Complete with the correct questions or answers:

(١) ؟ اِسْمُهُ مَحْمُودٌ
(٢) هَلْ هُوَ خَبَّازٌ ؟
(٣) أَنَا بِخَيْرٍ
(٤) كَيْفَ أُسْرَتُكَ ؟
(٥) مَنْ أَنْتَ ؟
(٦) ؟ نَعَمْ ، هٰذِهِ حَافِلَةٌ
(٧) صِحَّتِي طَيِّبَةٌ
(٨) هَلْ هُوَ طَوِيلٌ ؟ قَصِيرٌ
(٩) ؟ لَا ،
(١٠) مَا هٰذَا ؟

5. Choose the correct word:

(١) (كَيْفَ / مَا) أُخْتُكَ ؟

(٢) مَنْ (هٰذَا / هٰذِهِ) ؟ هٰذَا عَبْدُ اللهِ

(٣) (هَل / مَنْ) هِيَ طَالِبَةٌ ؟

(٤) هُوَ (خَدِيجَةُ / هَارُونُ)

(٥) كَيْفَ (حَالُكِ / حَالُهَا) ؟ هِيَ طَيِّبَةٌ

(٦) هَلْ (ذٰلِكَ / تِلْكَ) شَقَّةٌ

(٧) مَا (هٰذَا / هِيَ) ؟ هٰذَا فُسْتَانٌ

(٨) إِسْمُهَا (مَدِيحَةُ / شَهِيدٌ)

(٩) شَامِلٌ طَالِبٌ (غَيْبَةٌ / ذَكِيٌّ)

(١٠) كَيْفَ حَالُ الْأُسْتَاذِ ؟ (أَنْتَ / هُوَ) بِخَيْرٍ



The Prepositions: Fi, ʿAlā, Ilā and Min

حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ : فِي + عَلَىٰ + إِلَىٰ + مِنْ

The following prepositions are some of the common ones: فِي = In, عَلَى = On, إِلَى = To/Towards, and مِنْ = From.

اَلْإِنْكْلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
In a box	فِي صُنْدُوقٍ
In the box	فِي الصُّنْدُوقِ
On a table	عَلَى مَائِدَةٍ
On the table	عَلَى الْمَائِدَةِ
To a school	إِلَى مَدْرَسَةٍ
To the school	إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ
From a laboratory	مِنْ مُخْتَبَرٍ
From the laboratory	مِنَ الْمُخْتَبَرِ

Explanation:

1. In the examples above, the prepositions are followed by either an indefinite or a definite noun.
2. Whenever a preposition is followed by an indefinite noun, e.g. box (صُنْدُوق), the last letter of the noun has under it a "kasratāni" (ٍ). The tanwīn indicates indefiniteness.
3. When this particular noun is made definite, then the kasratāni changes to a kasra (ِ), i.e. it loses one of the two strokes.
4. The word" صُنْدُوق " changes to " اَلصُّنْدُوق ".

Examples:

1.	In a bus	فِي حَافِلَةٍ
	In the bus	فِي الْحَافِلَةِ
2.	On a shelf	عَلَى رَفٍّ
	On the shelf	عَلَى الرَّفِّ
3.	To a generous carpenter	إِلَى نَجَّارٍ كَرِيمٍ
	To the generous carpenter	إِلَى النَّجَّارِ الْكَرِيمِ
4.	From a fat girl	مِنْ بِنْتٍ سَمِينَةٍ
	From the fat girl	مِنَ الْبِنْتِ السَّمِينَةِ

Note:
In 3 and 4, the preposition are followed by adjectival phrases. Note that the adjective صِفَةٌ which follows the noun مَوْصُوفٌ also has the kasratāni (when indefinite) or kasra (when definite), e.g.:

To an active man	To the inactive man
إِلَى رَجُلٍ نَشِيطٍ	إِلَى الرَّجُلِ الْخَامِلِ

New Vocabulary:

A box	صُنْدُوقٌ	A laboratory	مُخْتَبَرٌ
A classroom	صَفٌّ	A shelf	رَفٌّ
A bed	سَرِيرٌ	Thin	نَحِيفٌ
Fat	سَمِينٌ	Arabic	اَللُّغَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ
A table	مَائِدَةٌ	An institute	مَعْهَدٌ

Exercise 17:

1. Translate the following prepositional phrases into Arabic:
 a. In the hotel
 b. From a servant
 c. On a wall
 d. From a big mosque
 e. To the market
 f. On a small desk
 g. To the famous city
 h. In a car
 i. In a cheap shop
 j. On the fridge

2. Translate the following prepositional phrases into English:

(١) فِي مُخْتَبَرٍ نَظِيفٍ
(٢) مِنَ الْمَسْجِدِ الْمَشْهُورِ
(٦) عَلَى الرَّفِّ الْوَاسِعِ
(٧) إِلَى الْجَامِعَةِ الصَّغِيرَةِ

(٣) مِنْ مَطْعَمٍ رَخِيصٍ
(٤) إِلَى وَالِدَةٍ سَمِينَةٍ
(٥) عَلَى طَاوِلَةٍ
(٨) فِي الدُّولَابِ الْكَبِيرِ
(٩) عَلَى الْمَكْتَبِ
(١٠) مِنْ مُدِيرٍ

3. Complete the following:

(١) عَلَى كَبِيرٍ
(٢) فِي الْفُنْدُقِ
(٣) مِنَ الْفَقِيرِ
(٤) فِي الْجَدِيدِ
(٥) مِنْ
(٦) مِنَ الْمُدَرِّسِ
(٧) إِلَى الْجَمِيلَةِ
(٨) فِي الْقَرْنِ
(٩) إِلَى الْحَدِيقَةِ
(١٠) فِي الرَّخِيصِ

4. Choose the correct prepositions in the following sentences:

(١) (عَلَى / فِي) الْحَافِلَةِ الْجَمِيلَةِ
(٢) (إِلَى / عَلَى) الْغُرْفَةِ
(٣) (مِنَ / عَلَى) الدُّرْجِ الضَّيِّقِ
(٤) (عَلَى / إِلَى) الْمُخْتَبَرِ
(٥) (فِي / عَلَى) الدَّرَّاجَةِ الْقَدِيمَةِ
(٦) (فِي / إِلَى) الصُّنْدُوقِ
(٧) (فِي / عَلَى) كُرْسِيٍّ مَكْسُورٍ
(٨) (مِنَ / عَلَى) الشَّارِعِ
(٩) (فِي / مِنَ) السَّيَّارَةِ الصَّغِيرَةِ
(١٠) (عَلَى / مِنْ) سَرِيرٍ

5. Choose the correct word in brackets:

(١) عَلَى (الْجِدَارِ / جِدَارٌ)
(٢) مِنَ (الْمَسْجِدَ / الْمَسْجِدِ) الْكَبِيرِ
(٣) إِلَى (الْمُدَرِّسُ / الْمُعَلِّمِ)
(٤) عَلَى (الشُّبَّاكِ / النَّافِذَةِ) الْوَاسِعَةِ
(٥) مِنَ (الْبَيْتِ / السَّفِينَةِ) الْجَمِيلَةَ
(٦) فِي (الْغُرْفَةِ / الشُّقَّةُ) النَّظِيفَةِ
(٧) إِلَى (مَعْهَدٍ / فُنْدُقٍ) صَغِيرٍ
(٨) فِي (الْفَصْلِ / صَفٌّ) جَدِيدٍ
(٩) مِنَ (الصُّنْدُوقِ / طَرْدٍ) الثَّقِيلِ
(١٠) عَلَى (الْمَائِدَةِ / الطَّاوِلَةُ)



The Interrogative Particle: Ayna

أَدَاةُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ : أَيْنَ

The interrogative particle " أَيْنَ " is used to ask about the whereabouts of a thing or a person.

The Question and the Answer	اَلسُّؤَالُ وَ الْجَوَابُ
Where is the water?	أَيْنَ الْمَاءُ ؟
The water is in the fridge.	اَلْمَاءُ فِي الثَّلَّاجَةِ
Where is the boy?	أَيْنَ الْوَلَدُ ؟
The boy is on the bicycle.	اَلْوَلَدُ عَلَى الدَّرَّاجَةِ
Where are you from?	مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ ؟
I am from Cairo.	أَنَا مِنَ الْقَاهِرَةِ

Explanation:

1. The interrogative particle " أَيْنَ " means "where" and it is followed immediately by the noun it asks about, e.g. "the water = اَلْمَاءُ " and "the boy = اَلْوَلَدُ ".

2. In replying to the questions, the prepositions are used. The answer to the first example gives a clear indication where the water is, i.e. "in فِي " the fridge and not "on عَلَى" the fridge.
3. In the third example, the question starts with the preposition " مِنْ from", and not with the interrogative particle "where أَيْنَ ".

Examples:

1.	a.	Where is the bag?	أَيْنَ الْحَقِيبَةُ ؟
		The bag is in the classroom.	اَلْحَقِيبَةُ فِي الصَّفِّ
	b.	Where is the dictionary?	أَيْنَ الْقَامُوسُ ؟
		The dictionary is on the shelf.	اَلْقَامُوسُ عَلَى الرَّفِّ
2.	a.	Where are you (m.) from?	مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ ؟
		I am from Medina.	أَنَا مِنَ الْمَدِينَةِ الْمُنَوَّرَةِ
	b.	From where is he?	مِنْ أَيْنَ هُوَ ؟
		He is from Morocco.	هُوَ مِنَ الْمَغْرِبِ
3.	a.	Where are you coming from?	مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ قَادِمٌ ؟
		I am coming from North Africa.	أَنَا قَادِمٌ مِنْ شَمَالِ إِفْرِيقِيَّا
	b.	Where is she going to?	إِلَى أَيْنَ هِيَ ذَاهِبَةٌ ؟
		She is going to Mecca.	هِيَ ذَاهِبَةٌ إِلَى مَكَّةَ الْمُكَرَّمَةِ

Note:
In group 3 a different set of examples appears. Note the arrangement of the words in the question and in the answer.

New Vocabulary:

A bell	جَرَسٌ	The Ka'ba	اَلْكَعْبَةُ
The east	اَلشَّرْقُ	The west	اَلْغَرْبُ
North Africa	شَمَالُ إِفْرِيقِيَّا	Bag	حَقِيبَةٌ
Morocco	اَلْمَغْرِبُ	Cairo	اَلْقَاهِرَةُ
Medina	اَلْمَدِينَةُ الْمُنَوَّرَةُ	Mecca	مَكَّةُ الْمُكَرَّمَةُ

Exercise 18:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. Where is the map? The map is on the desk.
 b. Where is the Ka'ba? The Ka'ba is in Mecca.
 c. Where is Morocco? Morocco is in North Africa.
 d. Where is she from? She is from Cairo.
 e. Where are you going to? I am going to Medina.

2. Translate into English:

(١) مُحَمَّدٌ ذَاهِبٌ إِلَى الْمَغْرِبِ

(٢) مِنْ أَيْنَ الْأُسْتَاذَةُ قَادِمَةٌ ؟

(٣) أَيْنَ النَّجَّارُ النَّشِيطُ ؟

(٤) مِنْ أَيْنَ الْمُدِيرُ الْمُجْتَهِدُ ؟

(٥) اَلْمُتَرْجِمُ فِي الْمُخْتَبَرِ الْجَدِيدِ

(٦) إِلَى أَيْنَ أَنْتِ ذَاهِبَةٌ ؟

(٧) اَلشَّاعِرُ قَادِمٌ مِنَ الْفُنْدُقِ

(٨) اَلْخَبَّازُ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ النَّظِيفِ

(٩) هُوَ مِنَ الْمَدِينَةِ الْمُنَوَّرَةِ

(١٠) إِلَى أَيْنَ الْمُؤَلِّفَةُ ذَاهِبَةٌ ؟

3. Give suitable answers to the following questions in Arabic:

(١) مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتِ قَادِمَةٌ ؟
(٢) أَيْنَ الثَّلَّاجَةُ الرَّخِيصَةُ ؟
(٣) هَلْ هُوَ فِي جَنُوبِ إِفْرِيقِيَّا ؟
(٤) مَنْ هُوَ ؟
(٥) هَلِ الْقِدْرُ عَلَى الْفُرْنِ ؟
(٦) إِلَى أَيْنَ الْخَيَّاطَةُ ذَاهِبَةٌ ؟
(٧) هَلِ الْخَادِمُ فِي الْبَيْتِ ؟
(٨) أَيْنَ الْكَعْبَةُ ؟
(٩) مِنْ أَيْنَ هُوَ قَادِمٌ ؟
(١٠) مَا اسْمُهَا ؟

4. Re-arrange the following words to make meaningful sentences:

(١) قَادِمٌ ، أَنْتَ ، مِنْ ، أَيْنَ ، ؟
(٢) مِنْ ، اَلْمُدَرِّسُ ، أَيْنَ ، اَلْجَدِيدُ ، ؟
(٣) اَلنَّظِيفَةُ ، اَلدُّرْجِ ، فِي ، اَلْمِمْسَحَةُ ، ؟
(٤) اَلْمَطْبَخِ ، اَلثَّلَّاجَةُ ، فِي ، هَلْ ، ؟
(٥) مَكَّةَ ، اَلْكَعْبَةُ ، فِي ، اَلْمُكَرَّمَةِ
(٦) اَلْمَرْأَةُ ، إِلَى ، أَيْنَ ، ذَاهِبَةٌ ، ؟
(٧) فِي ، اَلطَّالِبُ ، اَلسَّعِيدُ ، هَلِ ، اَلْفَصْلِ ؟
(٨) شَامِلٌ ، لَا ، إِسْمُهُ
(٩) اَلشَّرْقِ ، ذَاهِبٌ ، اَلْأُسْتَاذُ ، إِلَى
(١٠) هَلِ ، فِي ، شَمَالِ إِفْرِيقِيَّا ، اَلْقَاهِرَةُ ، ؟

5. Correct the mistakes:

(١) مِنْ أَيْنَ هُوَ قَادِمَةٌ ؟
(٢) هَلْ فَاطِمَةُ كَرِيمٌ ؟

(٣) اَلْمُدَرِّسُ اللَّطِيفُ فِي الْفَصْلِ الْكَبِيرَةِ
(٤) اَلْكَعْبَةُ فِي مَكَّةَ
(٥) اَلسَّرِيرُ الْخَفِيفَةُ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ
(٦) اَلْمُجْتَهِدُ الْكَاتِبُ فِي الْمَكْتَبَةِ
(٧) اَلْوَلَدُ فِي الدَّرَّاجَةِ
(٨) إِلَى أَيْنَ الْمَرْأَةُ ذَاهِبٌ ؟
(٩) هٰذَا حَقِيبَةٌ قَدِيمَةٌ
(١٠) إِلَى اَيْنَ الْمُدِيرَةُ قَادِمَةٌ ؟



The Dual

اَلْمُثَنَّى

In Arabic there are three numbers, namely:
the singular اَلْمُفْرَدُ , the dual اَلْمُثَنَّى , the plural اَلْجَمْعُ .
The singular has already been dealt with in the first chapter.
4. This chapter will introduce the dual.

		اَلْمُفْرَدُ		اَلْمُثَنَّى	
1.	a.	A door	بَابٌ	Two doors	بَابَانِ
	b.	The door	اَلْبَابُ	The two doors	اَلْبَابَانِ
2.	a.	A window	نَافِذَةٌ	Two windows	نَافِذَتَانِ
	b.	The window	اَلنَّافِذَةُ	The two windows	اَلنَّافِذَتَانِ

Explanation:

1. In order to formulate the dual, the number "two" is not used in Arabic. Instead, two letters are suffixed to the word concerned. The letters are "alif ا " and "nun ن "; the alif is a long vowel and the nun has a kasra.
5. 2. The two combined form the sound "ánі اَنِ ". It is observed that when a letter is suffixed to a 'ṭā' marbūṭa ة " then this "ṭā' marbūṭa" changes to "ṭā' maftūḥa ت ", as seen in the second example.
3. When making the dual definite, the " اَلْ " need only be attached. No changes occur at the end of the word as was the

case when it was singular. For example: بَابٌ changes to اَلْبَابُ , the "اَلْ" is attached and one "ḍamma" is dropped.

4. This form of the dual which ends in "ānі اَنِ" is used in the sentence as the subject.

Examples:

1.	a.	An airport	مَطَارٌ	Two airports	مَطَارَانِ
		The airport	اَلْمَطَارُ	The two airports	اَلْمَطَارَانِ
	b.	A factory	مَصْنَعٌ	Two factories	مَصْنَعَانِ
		The factory	اَلْمَصْنَعُ	The two factories	اَلْمَصْنَعَانِ
	c.	A centre	مَرْكَزٌ	Two centres	مَرْكَزَانِ
		The centre	اَلْمَرْكَزُ	The two centres	اَلْمَرْكَزَانِ
2.	a.	A station	مَحَطَّةٌ	Two stations	مَحَطَّتَانِ
		The station	اَلْمَحَطَّةُ	The two stations	اَلْمَحَطَّتَانِ
	b.	A clinic	عِيَادَةٌ	Two clinics	عِيَادَتَانِ
		The clinic	اَلْعِيَادَةُ	The two clinics	اَلْعِيَادَتَانِ
	c.	A ship	سَفِينَةٌ	Two ships	سَفِينَتَانِ
		The ship	اَلسَّفِينَةُ	The two ships	اَلسَّفِينَتَانِ

New Vocabulary:

A centre	مَرْكَزٌ	An airport	مَطَارٌ
A station	مَحَطَّةٌ	A donkey	حِمَارٌ
A bird	طَائِرٌ	A horse	حِصَانٌ
An ant	نَمْلَةٌ	A camel	جَمَلٌ
A question	سُؤَالٌ	Food	طَعَامٌ

Exercise 19:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. Two pens
 b. Two hotels
 c. Two men
 d. Two shops
 e. Two servants
 f. Two horses
 g. Two libraries
 h. Two donkeys
 i. Two institutes
 j. Two bells

2. Translate into English:

(١) اَلشَّرِكَتَانِ
(٢) اَلْعَامِلَانِ
(٣) حَدِيقَتَانِ
(٤) خَادِمَتَانِ
(٥) اَلشُّوكَتَانِ
(٦) بُسْتَانَانِ
(٧) اَلْمُخْتَبَرَانِ
(٨) جَرَسَانِ
(٩) اَلشَّقَّتَانِ
(١٠) قَرْيَتَانِ

3. Make the following definite:

(١) حَقِيبَتَانِ
(٢) نَمْلَتَانِ
(٣) مَكْتَبَتَانِ
(٤) ثَلَّاجَتَانِ
(٥) مُخْتَبَرَانِ
(٦) طَائِرَانِ
(٧) مَرْكَزَانِ
(٨) قَمِيصَانِ
(٩) خَيَّاطَتَانِ
(١٠) شُبَّاكَانِ

4. Change the following into the dual:

(١) سَفِينَةٌ
(٢) سَيَّارَةٌ
(٣) طَائِرَةٌ
(٤) حِمَارٌ
(٥) هِرٌّ
(٦) دَرَّاجَةٌ
(٧) حَافِلَةٌ
(٨) حِصَانٌ
(٩) كَلْبٌ
(١٠) جَمَلٌ

5. Give the singular of the following:

(١) خَبَّازَتَانِ
(٢) اَلنَّجَّارَانِ
(٣) مُؤَلِّفَانِ
(٤) اَلشَّاعِرَانِ
(٥) سَائِقَتَانِ
(٦) اَلطَّبَّاخَانِ
(٧) خَيَّاطَانِ
(٨) اَلْمُتَرْجِمَانِ
(٩) كَاتِبَانِ
(١٠) اَلْمُهَنْدِسَانِ

The Adjectival Phrase: Dual

اَلتَّعْبِيرُ النَّعْتِيُّ : اَلْمُثَنَّى

In Arabic the adjective must always agree with the noun in "gender = جِنْسٌ " and in "number = عَدَدٌ ". So if the noun is dual, then the adjective has to be dual.

		اَلْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
1.	a.	Two days	يَوْمَانِ
	b.	Two rainy days	يَوْمَانِ مُمْطِرَانِ
	c.	The two rainy days	اَلْيَوْمَانِ الْمُمْطِرَانِ
2.	a.	Two nights	لَيْلَتَانِ
	b.	Two hot nights	لَيْلَتَانِ حَارَّتَانِ
	c.	The two hot nights	اَللَّيْلَتَانِ الْحَارَّتَانِ

Explanation:

1. We have already seen that the dual in Arabic ends in "ãni = اَنِ."
2. When an adjective follows a noun, the adjective agrees in number. That is why the adjectives " حَارٌّ " (hot) and " مُمْطِرٌ " (rainy) have " اَنِ suffixed to them.

3. When the noun is indefinite, then the adjective must also be indefinite; when it is definite, then the adjective will also be definite, e.g.

يَوْمَانِ مُمْطِرَانِ　　اَلْيَوْمَانِ الْمُمْطِرَانِ

Examples:

1.	a.	Two rainy months	شَهْرَانِ مُمْطِرَانِ
	b.	Two cold rivers	نَهْرَانِ بَارِدَانِ
	c.	Two hot evenings	سَهْرَتَانِ حَارَّتَانِ
2.	a.	Two beautiful horses	حِصَانَانِ جَمِيلَانِ
	b.	Two big camels	جَمَلَانِ كَبِيرَانِ
	c.	Two ugly donkeys	حِمَارَانِ قَبِيحَانِ

New Vocabulary:

A night	لَيْلَةٌ	A day	يَوْمٌ
Month	شَهْرٌ	Hot	حَارٌّ
Year	عَامٌ	Rainy	مُمْطِرٌ
Cold	بَارِدٌ	An evening	سَهْرَةٌ
A morning	صَبَاحٌ	An evening	مَسَاءٌ

Exercise 20:

1. Translate the following into Arabic:

a.	Two happy servants	f.	Two short rulers
b.	Where are the two books?	g.	Two cold nights
c.	Two new pens	h.	The two clean desks
d.	The two inactive boys	e.	The two sincere men
e.	How are the two teachers?	j.	Two broken chairs

2. Translate the following into English:

(١) أَيْنَ الْجَمَلَانِ ؟
(٢) لَيْلَتَانِ طَوِيلَتَانِ
(٣) الْكِتَابَانِ الْمُفِيدَانِ
(٤) شَرِكَتَانِ مَشْهُورَتَانِ
(٥) الْمَصْنَعَانِ الصَّغِيرَانِ
(٦) كَيْفَ الْوَلَدَانِ ؟
(٧) الْحِصَانَانِ الْكَبِيرَانِ
(٨) أَيْنَ الْمُدِيرَانِ النَّشِيطَانِ ؟
(٩) كَيْفَ الْمُعَلِّمَتَانِ الْجَدِيدَتَانِ ؟
(١٠) اَلسَّهْرَتَانِ الْمُمْطِرَتَانِ

3. Complete with suitable words:

(١) الْمُخْلِصَتَانِ
(٢) كَيْفَ الْبِنْتَانِ ؟
(٣) اَلضَّعِيفَانِ
(٤) الْعَامَانِ
(٥) أَيْنَ الْمُدِيرَتَانِ ؟
(٦) اَلتِّلْمِيذَانِ الْخَامِلَانِ ؟
(٧) مَعْهَدَانِ
(٨) مِنَ الْمُدَرِّسَانِ ؟
(٩) أَيْنَ الْكَلْبَانِ ؟
(١٠) اَلْمَطَارَانِ

4. Choose the correct adjective:

(١) اَلسَّهْرَتَانِ (اَلْمُمْطِرَتَانِ / مُمْطِرَانِ)
(٢) اَلْكَاتِبَانِ (اَلْمُخْلِصَتَانِ / اَلْمُخْلِصَانِ)
(٣) اَيْنَ الشَّاعِرَانِ (اَلْمَشْهُورَتَانِ / اَلْمَشْهُورَانِ) ؟

(٤) كَيْفَ الْوَلَدَانِ (الذَّكِيَّانِ / الْغَبِيَّتَانِ) ؟

(٥) الْمَرْأَتَانِ (الْمُسْلِمَانِ / الْمُسْلِمَتَانِ)

(٦) مَنِ الْأُسْتَاذَانِ (الْأَنِيسَانِ / أَنِيسَتَانِ) ؟

(٧) أَيْنَ الصَّدِيقَانِ (اللَّطِيفَتَانِ / اللَّطِيفَانِ) ؟

(٨) اَلتِّلْمِيذَانِ (اَلصَّغِيرَتَانِ / اَلصَّغِيرَانِ)

(٩) الْمُخْتَبَرَانِ (جَدِيدَتَانِ / الْجَدِيدَانِ)

(١٠) الْمُحَاسِبَتَانِ (الْبَخِيلَتَانِ / الْكَرِيمَانِ)

5. Vocalize the following:

(١) هل الدفتران فى الدرج ؟

(٢) أين الحقيبتان الثقيلتان ؟

(٣) المسطرتان على المكتب

(٤) المنضدتان المكسورتان

(٥) المدرسان فى الفصل

(٦) كيف الطّاليتان الجديدتان ؟

(٧) الأستاذتان النشيطتان

(٨) الجامعتان الكبيرتان

(٩) التلميذتان المطيعتان في الصف

(١٠) الممسحتان الوسختان



The Nominal Sentence: Dual

اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْإِسْمِيَّةُ : اَلْمُثَنَّى

In the nominal sentence اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْإِسْمِيَّةُ, the predicate اَلْخَبَرُ must agree with the subject اَلْمُبْتَدَأُ, in gender اَلْجِنْسُ and in number اَلْعَدَدُ. Thus, if the subject is dual, then the predicate must also be dual. The predicate of the nominal sentence is always indefinite نَكِرَةٌ.

		اَلْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
1.	a.	Two just Muslims	مُسْلِمَانِ عَادِلَانِ
	b.	The two just Muslims	اَلْمُسْلِمَانِ الْعَادِلَانِ
	c.	The two Muslims are just.	اَلْمُسْلِمَانِ عَادِلَانِ
2.	a.	Two truthful believers (f.)	مُؤْمِنَتَانِ صَادِقَتَانِ
	b.	The two truthful believers	اَلْمُؤْمِنَتَانِ الصَّادِقَتَانِ
	c.	The two believers are truthful.	اَلْمُؤْمِنَتَانِ صَادِقَتَانِ

Explanation:

1. The first two examples of 1. and 2. are adjectival phrases/ the indefinite is followed by the definite/ where the adjective اَلصِّفَةُ agrees with the noun described اَلْمَوْصُوفُ in gender and in number.

2. The last examples of 1. and 2. are nominal sentences where the subject is definite and the predicate indefinite. Both the subject and the predicate end in " اَنِ ".
3. The first group of examples is مُذَكَّرٌ (masculine) and the second group is مُؤَنَّثٌ (feminine).

Examples:

1.	a.	The two institutes are open.	اَلْمَعْهَدَانِ مَفْتُوحَانِ
	b.	The two mosques are clean.	اَلْمَسْجِدَانِ نَظِيفَانِ
	c.	The two friends are obedient.	اَلصَّدِيقَانِ مُطِيعَانِ
	d.	The two enemies are present.	اَلْعَدُوَّانِ مَوْجُودَانِ
	e.	The two workers are absent.	اَلْعَامِلَانِ غَائِبَانِ
2.	a.	The two ladies are Muslims.	اَلْمَرْأَتَانِ مُسْلِمَتَانِ
	b.	The two students are friendly.	اَلطَّالِبَتَانِ أَنِيسَتَانِ
	c.	The two mothers are polite.	اَلْوَالِدَتَانِ مُهَذَّبَتَانِ
	d.	The two windows are open.	اَلنَّافِذَتَانِ مَفْتُوحَتَانِ
	e.	The two universities are closed.	اَلْجَامِعَتَانِ مُغْلَقَتَانِ

New Vocabulary:

A believer	مُؤْمِنٌ	Truthful	صَادِقٌ
An enemy	عَدُوٌّ	Absent	غَائِبٌ
Present	مَوْجُودٌ	Open	مَفْتُوحٌ
Closed	مُغْلَقٌ	Just	عَادِلٌ
Well-mannered	مُؤَدَّبٌ	Early	مُبَكِّرٌ

Exercise 21:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. Where are the two schools?
 b. Are the two universities open?
 c. The two dogs are small.
 d. The two cups are broken.
 e. Are the two cooks (f.) happy?
 f. The two pupils are absent.
 g. Who are the two inactive servants?
 h. The two Muslims are in Medina.
 i. Where are the two well-mannered students?
 j. The two camels are strong.

2. Translate into English:

(١) اَلْعَدُوَّانِ مَوْجُودَتَانِ

(٢) مَنِ الْمُدَرِّسَتَانِ الْمُهَذَّبَتَانِ ؟

(٣) كَيْفَ الصَّدِيقَانِ الْجَدِيدَانِ ؟

(٤) نَعَمْ ، اَللُّغَتَانِ صَعْبَتَانِ

(٥) أَيْنَ الشَّقَّتَانِ الْقَدِيمَتَانِ ؟

(٦) أَيْنَ الْمُعَلِّمَانِ الصَّادِقَانِ ؟

(٧) اَلْمُسْلِمَتَانِ فِي مَكَّةَ

(٨) هَلِ الْمُدَرِّسَتَانِ فِي الْمُخْتَبَرِ ؟

(٩) لَا ، اَلْبِنْتَانِ نَشِيطَتَانِ

(١٠) عِنْدَهُ سَاعَتَانِ رَخِيصَتَانِ

3. Change the following to the dual:

(١) هَلِ الدُّكَّانُ مَفْتُوحٌ ؟
(٢) أَيْنَ السُّوقُ الْكَبِيرَةُ ؟
(٣) كَيْفَ الطِّفْلُ الْمُطِيعُ ؟
(٤) مَنِ الْكَاتِبَةُ الْمَشْهُورَةُ ؟
(٥) نَعَمْ ، الْمَطْبَخُ نَظِيفٌ
(٦) اَلدُّولَابُ مُغْلَقٌ
(٧) اَلْعِيَادَةُ الْكَبِيرَةُ
(٨) اَلْأُمُّ نَشِيطَةٌ
(٩) اَلْمُمَرِّضَةُ الْغَائِبَةُ
(١٠) لَا ، اَلْغُرْفَةُ وَسِخَةٌ

4. Re-arrange the following words in the correct sequence to make meaningful sentences:

(١) فِي ، اَلطَّبِيبَانِ ، الْعِيَادَةِ ، الْمُتَوَاضِعَانِ ، هَلِ ، ؟
(٢) الْبَيْتِ ، الْمُجْتَهِدَتَانِ ، فِي ، الْوَالِدَتَانِ
(٣) الْحَلَّاقَتَانِ ، السُّوقِ ، إِلَى ، ذَاهِبَتَانِ
(٤) الْقَدِيمَانِ ، عَلَى ، الْمِلَفَّانِ ، الْمَكْتَبِ ، هَلِ ، ؟
(٥) الْمَكْسُورَانِ ، الدُّرْجِ ، الْمِفْتَاحَانِ ، فِي ، الْكَبِيرِ
(٦) أَيْنَ ، قَادِمَانِ ، الشَّاعِرَانِ ، مِنْ ، ؟
(٧) الْمَطْبَخِ ، لَا ، الطَّبَّاخَانِ ، فِي ، الْمُمْتَازَانِ ، الصَّغِيرِ
(٨) الْأَنِيسَتَانِ ، صَادِقَتَانِ ، نَعَمْ ، الْأُخْتَانِ
(٩) إِلَى ، الْمُدِيرَانِ ، أَيْنَ ، الْجَدِيدَانِ ، ذَاهِبَانِ ، ؟
(١٠) عَلَى ، هَلْ ، حَقِيبَتُكَ ، الرَّفِّ ، ؟

5. Complete the following with suitable predicates chosen from the words given in brackets:

(مَفْتُوحَتَانِ ، نَظِيفَانِ ، مُغْلَقَانِ ، سَهْلَانِ ، مُغْلَقَانِ ، كَبِيرَتَانِ ، ذَكِيَّتَانِ ، مُجْتَهِدَتَانِ ، مَكْسُورَانِ ، صَغِيرَتَانِ)

(١) اَلدَّرْسَانِ

(٢) اَلْخَبَّازَانِ

(٣) اَلْمَطْبَخَانِ

(٤) اَلْجَامِعَتَانِ

(٥) اَلطَّائِرَتَانِ

(٦) اَلشَّارِعَانِ

(٧) اَلْجَزِيرَتَانِ

(٨) اَلدُّرْجَانِ

(٩) اَلشَّاعِرَتَانِ

(١٠) اَلطَّالِبَتَانِ



The Sound Masculine Plural

جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمُ

In Arabic there are three types of plural:

Sound Masculine Plural	جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمُ
Sound Feminine Plural	جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمُ
Broken Plural	جَمْعُ التَّكْسِيرِ

This lesson will deal with the sound masculine plural (S.M.P.) only, referred to as a "sound plural" because it has fixed pattern. Arabic, as English, has various ways of making nouns plural. The pattern of the S.M.P., whether nouns or adjectives, is determined by special suffixes.

	Sing.	Dual	S.M.P.
Indef.	مُعَلِّمٌ A teacher	مُعَلِّمَانِ Two teachers	مُعَلِّمُونَ Teachers
Def.	اَلْمُعَلِّمُ The teacher	اَلْمُعَلِّمَانِ The two teachers	اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ The teachers

Explanation:

1. In the block are examples of the word "teacher", given in its مُفْرَدٌ (singular), مُثَنَّى (dual) and جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمُ (sound masculine plural) forms. Only the masculine gender is given.
2. Under the S.M.P., the Arabic word is suffixed by a و (wāw) and a ن (nūn), which give the sound وْنَ (ūna). We thus have اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ .
3. Notice that there are no changes at the end of the word when the " اَلْ " is prefixed to it اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ

Note:
Only some of the nouns and adjectives follow the S.M.P. pattern. But most nouns and adjectives follow the Broken Plural pattern.

Examples:

	مُسَافِرٌ	مُسَافِرَانِ	مُسَافِرُونَ
1.	A traveller	Two travellers	Travellers
	طَبَّاخٌ	طَبَّاخَانِ	طَبَّاخُونَ
2.	A cook	Two cooks	Cooks
	مُسْتَمِعٌ	مُسْتَمِعَانِ	مُسْتَمِعُونَ
3.	A listener	Two listeners	Listeners
	اِفْرِيقِيٌّ	اِفْرِيقِيَّانِ	اِفْرِيقِيُّونَ
4.	An African	Two Africans	Africans
	أَمْرِيكِيٌّ	أَمْرِيكِيَّانِ	أَمْرِيكِيُّونَ
5.	An American	Two Americans	Americans

New Vocabulary:

An African	إِفْرِيقِيٌّ	A speaker	مُتَكَلِّمٌ
A listener	مُسْتَمِعٌ	A hypocrite	مُنَافِقٌ
An Arab	عَرَبِيٌّ	An emigrant	مُهَاجِرٌ
A traveller	مُسَافِرٌ	A disbeliever	كَافِرٌ
An American	أَمْرِيكِيٌّ	An Indian	هِنْدِيٌّ

Note:
The S.M.P., like the singular and the dual, can be used with interrogative particls. The particle (اَلْأَدَاةُ) usually comes before the noun it refers to, e.g.

Who are the travellers?	مَنِ الْمُسَافِرُونَ ؟
Are the Muslims in the mosque?	هَلِ الْمُسْلِمُونَ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ ؟

Exercise 22:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. The hypocrites
 b. Emigrants
 c. Disbelievers
 d. The sincere listeners
 e. Who are the authors?
 f. Where are the nurses (m.)?
 g. Who are the speakers?
 h. Are the cooks in the restaurant?
 i. Engineers
 j. The principals

2. Translate into English:

(١) اَلْمُهَاجِرُونَ
(٢) مَنِ الْمُسْتَمِعُونَ ؟
(٣) مُهَنْدِسُونَ
(٤) هَلِ الْمُمَرِّضُونَ فِي الْعِيَادَةِ ؟
(٥) اَلصَّحَفِيُّونَ
(٦) أَيْنَ الصَّادِقُونَ ؟
(٧) مِنْ أَيْنَ الْمُدَرِّسُونَ ؟
(٨) هَلِ الْمُتَرْجِمُونَ فِي الْمُخْتَبَرِ ؟
(٩) اَلتُّجَّارُونَ فِي الْمَصْنَعِ
(١٠) اَلْمُسَافِرُونَ فِي الْمَطَارِ

3. Change the following to the S.M.P.:

(١) مُنَافِقَانِ
(٢) اَلْهِنْدِيُّ
(٣) كَيْفَ الْخَادِمُ ؟
(٤) أَيْنَ الْحَلَّاقُ ؟
(٥) مَنِ الْأَمْرِيكِيُّ ؟
(٦) كَافِرٌ
(٧) أَيْنَ الْمُؤْمِنُ ؟
(٨) مَنِ الْمُعَلِّمُ ؟
(٩) اِفْرِيقِيٌّ
(١٠) كَيْفَ حَالُ الْمُؤَلِّفِ ؟

4. Make the following plurals definite:

(١) مُسْتَمِعُونَ
(٢) مُؤْمِنُونَ
(٣) مُخْلِصُونَ
(٤) مُهَنْدِسُونَ
(٥) فَلَّاحُونَ
(٦) مُسْلِمُونَ
(٧) مُمْتَازُونَ
(٨) مُطِيعُونَ
(٩) طَبَّاخُونَ
(١٠) خَبَّازُونَ

5. Give the singular and the dual of the following:

(١) أَيْنَ الصَّادِقُونَ ؟

(٢) كَيْفَ الْوَالِدُونَ ؟

(٣) لَا ، اَلْمُحَاضِرُونَ فِي الْجَامِعَةِ

(٤) اَلْمُهَذَّبُونَ

(٥) نَعَمْ ، اَلْمُدَرِّسُونَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ

(٦) مَنِ الْعَامِلُونَ ؟

(٧) هَلِ السَّائِقُونَ فِي السَّيَّارَةِ ؟

(٨) مِنْ أَيْنَ الْمُسْتَمِعُونَ ؟

(٩) مُنَافِقُونَ

(١٠) اَلْمُسَافِرُونَ فِي الْقَاهِرَةِ



The Adjectival Phrase: Sound Masc. Pl.

اَلتَّعْبِيرُ النَّعْتِيُّ : جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمُ

As in the singular and the dual, an adjectival phrase can be formulated in the plural as well. The adjective must agree in gender, number and whether it is indefinite or definite.

		اَلْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
1.	a.	An excellent cook	طَبَّاخٌ مُمْتَازٌ
	b.	Two excellent cooks	طَبَّاخَانِ مُمْتَازَانِ
	c.	Excellent cooks	طَبَّاخُونَ مُمْتَازُونَ
2.	a.	The excellent cook	الطَّبَّاخُ الْمُمْتَازُ
	b.	The two excellent cooks	اَلطَّبَّاخَانِ الْمُمْتَازَانِ
	c.	The excellent cooks	اَلطَّبَّاخُونَ الْمُمْتَازُونَ

Explanation:

1. Indefinite phrases of the singular, dual and plural are given in group 1.
2. Group 2 contains definite phrases.
3. It is thus important to note that the adjective takes the "ūna وُنَ " in conformity with the pattern of the subject it refers to, e.g.:
 The excellent cooks اَلطَّبَّاخُونَ الْمُمْتَازُونَ

Examples:

1. Indefinite S.M.P.:

 a. Industrious workers — عَامِلُونَ مُجْتَهِدُونَ

 b. Skilful engineers — مُهَنْدِسُونَ مَاهِرُونَ

 c. Cunning unbelievers — كَافِرُونَ مَاكِرُونَ

2. Definite S.M.P.:

 a. The successful employees — اَلْمُوَظَّفُونَ النَّاجِحُونَ

 b. (The) many tailors — اَلْخَيَّاطُونَ الْكَثِيرُونَ

 c. The honest servants — اَلْخَادِمُونَ الصَّالِحُونَ

New Vocabulary:

Honest	صَالِحٌ	Successful	نَاجِحٌ
A partner	شَرِيكٌ	Cunning	مَاكِرٌ
An employee	مُوَظَّفٌ	A guide	مُرْشِدٌ
Skilful	مَاهِرٌ	Many	كَثِيرٌ
A player	لَاعِبٌ	Late	مُتَأَخِّرٌ

Exercise 23:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. Where are the honest guides?
 b. Who are the skilful engineers?
 c. From where are the polite travellers?
 d. The sincere Muslims are in the mosque.
 e. Good listeners
 f. The truthful guides
 g. Are the excellent cooks in the kitchen?
 h. Polite players
 i. The just believers are in the house.
 j. The famous guides

2. Translate into English:

(١) أَيْنَ التُّجَّارُونَ الْمَاهِرُونَ ؟
(٢) اَلْمُسَافِرُونَ فِي الطَّائِرَةِ
(٣) كَيْفَ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ الْعَادِلُونَ ؟
(٤) مَنِ الْمُدِيرُونَ الْكَثِيرُونَ ؟
(٥) اَلْحَلَّاقُونَ الْغَائِبُونَ
(٦) مِنْ أَيْنَ الْمُهَنْدِسُونَ ؟
(٧) اَلْخَبَّازُونَ حَاضِرُونَ
(٨) مُدَرِّسُونَ نَاجِحُونَ
(٩) أَيْنَ الْمَاكِرُونَ ؟
(١٠) اَلْمُمَرِّضُونَ الْمَاهِرُونَ فِي الْعِيَادَةِ

3. Choose the correct word in brackets:

(١) اَلْمُدِيرُونَ (اَلْمُجْتَهِدَتَانِ / اَلْمُجْتَهِدُونَ)
(٢) أَيْنَ الْمُتَرْجِمُونَ (اَلْمَاهِرُونَ / اَلْمَاهِرَةُ) ؟
(٣) مَنِ الْفَلَّاحُونَ (النَّاجِحَانِ / النَّاجِحُونَ) ؟
(٤) كَيْفَ اَلْمُسْلِمُونَ (اَلْمُطِيعُونَ / اَلْمُطِيعَةُ) ؟
(٥) اَلْمُوَظَّفُونَ (اَلشَّيْطَانِ / اَلْخَامِلُونَ)
(٦) مِنْ أَيْنَ الْمُسَافِرُونَ (اَلْمُخْلِصُونَ / اَلْمُسْلِمَانِ) ؟
(٧) اَلْمُهَنْدِسُونَ (اَلْغَائِبَانِ / مَوْجُودُونَ)

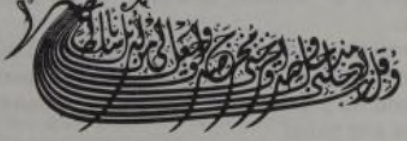
(٨) مَنِ الْخَيَّاطُونَ (الصَّالِحَةُ / الصَّالِحُونَ) ؟
(٩) اَلْحَلَّاقُوْنَ (اَلْأَمْرِيكِيُّوْنَ / الْإِفْرِيقِيَّانِ)
(١٠) اَلْمُؤَلِّفُونَ (اَلْمَوْجُودُ / الْإِفْرِيقِيُّونَ)

4. Give the plural of the following:

(١) مُوَظَّفَانِ نَشِيطَانِ
(٢) اَلْمُهَنْدِسَانِ اَلْمَاهِرَانِ
(٣) اَلْحَلَّاقُ اَلْمُسْلِمُ
(٤) أَمْرِيكِيٌّ مُؤْمِنٌ
(٥) شَرِيكٌ إِفْرِيقِيٌّ
(٦) اَلْمُؤْمِنُ الصَّالِحُ
(٧) مِنْ أَيْنَ اَلْمُسَافِرُ ؟
(٨) كَيْفَ حَالُ الْوَالِدِ ؟
(٩) مَنِ التَّجَّارُ اَلْمَاكِرُ ؟
(١٠) أَيْنَ الْمُعَلِّمُ الْمُجْتَهِدُ ؟

5. Vocalize the following:

(١) أين المدرّسون المجتهدون ؟
(٢) الخادمون المتأخرون
(٣) الأجنبيّان المنافقان
(٤) من أين الزائرون الناجحون ؟
(٥) من المستمعون الماهرون ؟
(٦) المتكلّمون الصّالحون
(٧) هل المهندستان ماهرتان ؟
(٨) إلى أين المسافرتان ذاهبتان ؟
(٩) موظّفون ممتازون في الشركة
(١٠) هل الشريك المجتهد في المكتب ؟



The Nominal Sentence: Sound Masc. Pl.

اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْإِسْمِيَّةُ : جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمُ

In two earlier chapters, examples of the "nominal sentence" in its singular and dual form were studied. This chapter will show the usage of the "nominal sentence" in its plural form.

اَلْإِنْكْلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
1. Present visitors	زَائِرُونَ حَاضِرُونَ
2. The present visitors	اَلزَّائِرُونَ الْحَاضِرُونَ
3. The visitors are present.	اَلزَّائِرُونَ حَاضِرُونَ

Explanation:

1. In example 1 and 2, "adjectival phrases" in their plural form are given.
2. In example 3, a "nominal sentence" in its plural form is presented.
 The grammatical principles found here are the same as those seen in the singular and dual. The subject اَلزَّائِرُونَ is definite and its predicate حَاضِرُونَ is indefinite. Both are masculine and plural.

Examples:

1.	The teachers are outstanding.	اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ فَاضِلُونَ
2.	The players are good.	اَللَّاعِبُونَ طَيِّبُونَ
3.	The tailors are skilful.	اَلْخَيَّاطُونَ مَاهِرُونَ
4.	The hypocrites are cunning.	اَلْمُنَافِقُونَ مَاكِرُونَ
5.	The workers are hardworking.	اَلْعَامِلُونَ مُجْتَهِدُونَ

New Vocabulary:

Present	حَاضِرٌ		
Neglectful	غَافِلٌ	A Saudi	سَعُودِيٌّ
Angry	غَاضِبٌ	An inspector	مُفَتِّشٌ
Serious	مُجِدٌّ	Sleeping	نَائِمٌ
Outstanding	فَاضِلٌ	An Egyptian	مِصْرِيٌّ

Exercise 24:

1. Translate into Arabic
 a. The Saudis are present.
 b. Are the guides good?
 c. The employees are polite.
 d. From where are the honest inspectors?
 e. The teachers are angry.

f. The guides are famous.
g. Are the workers polite?
h. The carpenters are neglectful.
i. The listeners are translators.
j. Where are the famous authors?

2. Translate into English:

(١) اَلْجَنُوبُ إِفْرِيقِيُّونَ فِي مَكَّةَ
(٢) هَلِ الْمُنَافِقُونَ غَائِبُونَ ؟
(٣) اَلْمُدَرِّسُونَ فَاضِلُونَ
(٤) اَلْمُفَتِّشُونَ عَادِلُونَ
(٥) مِنْ أَيْنَ الزَّائِرُونَ الْحَاضِرُونَ ؟
(٦) مَنِ الْعَامِلُونَ الْغَافِلُونَ ؟
(٧) اَلْمُؤَلِّفُونَ مَشْهُورُونَ
(٨) اَلْمُرْشِدُونَ الْمَاهِرُونَ مُسْلِمُونَ
(٩) اَلْمُسْلِمُونَ صَالِحُونَ
(١٠) اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ غَاضِبُونَ

3. Change the following to the plural form:

(١) هَلِ الْمِصْرِيُّ غَائِبٌ
(٢) مَنِ الزَّائِرُ الْفَاضِلُ ؟
(٣) اَلْمُشْرِكُ حَاضِرٌ
(٤) اَلْمُؤْمِنُ مُهَذَّبٌ
(٥) اَلْخَبَّازَانِ نَظِيفَانِ
(٦) نَعَمْ ، اَلْمُسْتَمِعُ غَافِلٌ
(٧) لَا ، اَلْمُحَاضِرُ مُمْتَازٌ
(٨) اَلْمُسَافِرَانِ مِنْ جَنُوبِ إِفْرِيقِيَا
(٩) إِلَى أَيْنَ الْمُسْلِمُ ذَاهِبٌ ؟
(١٠) اَلْمُفَتِّشُ الصَّالِحُ مَوْجُودٌ

4. Fill in the blanks:

(١) اَلْمُطِيعُونَ
(٢) أَيْنَ اَلْمَاكِرُونَ ؟
(٣) اَلْمُسَافِرُونَ اَلْقَاهِرَةِ
(٦) اَلْمُفَتِّشُونَ غَائِبُونَ
(٧) مَنِ الْمُرْشِدُونَ ؟
(٨) مِنْ الزَّائِرُونَ ؟

(٤) لَا ، مُخْلِصُونَ (٩) نَعَمْ ، مَاهِرُونَ

(٥) نَائِمُونَ (١٠) اَللَّاعِبُونَ

5. Vocalize:

(١) هل التلميذ الذكي في المدرسة ؟

(٢) من المدرسون الناجحون ؟

(٣) الزائرون المخلصون من جنوب افريقيا

(٤) إلى أين المرشدان الفاضلان ذاهبان ؟

(٥) المستمع الممتاز فى المختبر

(٦) هل العاملون النشيطون فى المصنع ؟

(٧) لا ، المسافرون قادمون من المدينة المنورة

(٨) أين الخادمون المطيعون ؟

(٩) المديرون النشيطون في الغرفة

(١٠) المحاضرون عادلون



The Sound Feminine Plural

جَمْعُ ٱلْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمُ

The sound plural is divided into جَمْعُ ٱلْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمُ (the sound masculine plural) and جَمْعُ ٱلْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمُ (the sound feminine plural). This chapter deals with the latter group (S.F.P.).

		ٱلْإِنْكْلِيزِيَّةُ	ٱلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
1.	a.	A servant	خَادِمَةٌ
	b.	The servant	ٱلْخَادِمَةُ
2.	a.	Two servants	خَادِمَتَانِ
	b.	The two servants	ٱلْخَادِمَتَانِ
3.	a.	Servants	خَادِمَاتٌ
	b.	The servants	ٱلْخَادِمَاتُ

Explanation:

1. In the first group of examples, the indefinite and definite singular forms of the feminine noun خَادِمَةٌ are given.
2. The dual of خَادِمَةٌ in its indefinite and definite forms is given in the second group of examples.

3. The last group has the sound feminine plural in its indefinite and definite forms. The S.F.P. is suffixed, i.e. added at the end of the word, by the letters ا (alif) and ت (ta) respectively.
4. Note that the "alif" is preceded by a "fatha" letter, and the "ṭā' maftūḥa" takes ḍammatāni indicating indefiniteness. The definite form, therefore, loses a ḍamma and is prefixed by "Al".
5. The ة (ṭā' marbūṭa) changes into a ت (ṭā' maftūḥa) when the feminine word changes to the dual or S.F.P.

Examples:

	مُوَظَّفَةٌ	مُوَظَّفَتَانِ	مُوَظَّفَاتٌ
1.	An employee	Two employees	Employees
	عَامِلَةٌ	عَامِلَتَانِ	عَامِلَاتٌ
2.	A worker	Two workers	Workers
	سَيِّدَةٌ	سَيِّدَتَانِ	سَيِّدَاتٌ
3.	A lady	Two ladies	Ladies
	مُفَتِّشَةٌ	مُفَتِّشَتَانِ	مُفَتِّشَاتٌ
4.	An inspectress	Two inspectresses	Inspectresses
	مُشْرِكَةٌ	مُشْرِكَتَانِ	مُشْرِكَاتٌ
5.	A polytheist	Two polytheists	Polytheists

New Vocabulary:

A lady	سَيِّدَةٌ	Sitting	جَالِسٌ
An accused	مُتَّهَمٌ	Smiling	مُبْتَسِمٌ
A governor	حَاكِمٌ	Thankful	شَاكِرٌ
A family	عَائِلَةٌ	A polytheist	مُشْرِكٌ

Exercise 25:

1. Translate into Arabic:

a.	The professors (f.)	f.	A guide (f.)
b.	Two friends (f.)	g.	A lady (f.)
c.	The two teachers (f.)	h.	The listeners (f.)
d.	Hypocrites (f.)	i.	Two servants (f.)
e.	A principal (f.)	j.	The two lecturers (f.)

2. Translate into English:

(١) مَنِ الْمُنَافِقَتُ؟

(٢) هَلْ هِيَ الْحَاكِمَةُ ؟

(٣) اَلصَّدِيقَتَانِ

(٤) كَيْفَ الْوَالِدَةُ ؟

(٥) اَلتِّلْمِيذَةُ

(٦) أَيْنَ الْمُسْلِمَةُ

(٧) كَاتِبَةٌ

(٨) اَلْخَيَّاطَةُ

(٩) اَلطَّالِبَةُ

(١٠) مَنِ الزَّائِرَةُ ؟

3. Choose the correct plural form:

(١) اَلْأُسْتَاذَةُ ج (اَلْأَسَاتِذَةُ / اَلْأُسْتَاذَاتُ)
(٢) اَلشَّاعِرَةُ ج (اَلشَّاعِرَاتُ / الشُّعَرَاءُ)
(٣) اَلْمُخْلِصُ ج (اَلْمُخْلِصَاتُ / اَلْمُخْلِصُونَ)
(٤) خَادِمٌ ج (اَلْخَادِمُونَ / خَادِمُونَ)
(٥) اَلْكَاتِبَةُ ج (اَلْكُتَّابُ / اَلْكَاتِبَاتُ)
(٦) اَلْمُهَنْدِسُ ج (مُهَنْدِسَاتٌ / اَلْمُهَنْدِسُونَ)
(٧) ذَكِيَّةٌ ج (ذَكِيَّاتٌ / أَذْكِيَاءُ)
(٨) اَلْمُسْلِمَةُ ج (اَلْمُسْلِمُونَ / اَلْمُسْلِمَاتُ)
(٩) صَالِحٌ ج (اَلصَّالِحُونَ / صَالِحُونَ)
(١٠) اَلْمُدَرِّسَةُ ج (اَلْمُدَرِّسَاتُ / اَلْمُدَرِّسُونَ)

4. Complete the following table:

مُفْرَدٌ	مُثَنًّى	جَمْعٌ
عَادِلَةٌ		
	اَلطَّالِبَانِ	اَلتُّجَّارُونَ
فَاضِلٌ		
		مُحَاضِرَاتٌ

5. Vocalize the following:

(١) من أين المؤمنة قادمة ؟
(٢) من المحاضرات ؟
(٣) الأستاذات في الجامعة
(٤) من الزائرتان المخلصتان ؟
(٥) المستمعان في الشركة
(٦) هل الموظّفون مسلمون ؟
(٧) المدرّسات في الفصل
(٨) أين المفتّشون العادلون ؟
(٩) إلى أين الزّعيمان ذاهبان ؟
(١٠) المترجمات في المختبر



The Adjectival Phrase: Sound Fem. Pl.

اَلتَّعْبِيرُ النَّعْتِيُّ : جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمُ

The same grammatical rules of the sound feminine plural are found here too.

		اَلْإِنْكْلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
1.	a.	An outstanding lecturer (f.)	مُحَاضِرَةٌ فَاضِلَةٌ
	b.	Two outstanding lecturers	مُحَاضِرَتَانِ فَاضِلَتَانِ
	c.	Outstanding lecturers	مُحَاضِرَاتٌ فَاضِلَاتٌ
2.	a.	The outstanding lecturer	اَلْمُحَاضِرَةُ الْفَاضِلَةُ
	b.	The two outstanding lecturers	اَلْمُحَاضِرَتَانِ الْفَاضِلَتَانِ
	c.	The outstanding lecturers	اَلْمُحَاضِرَاتُ الْفَاضِلَاتُ

Explanation:

1. In example 1, the adjectival phrases are in their indefinite form of the singular, dual and plural.
2. In example 2, the adjectival phrases are in their definite form of the singular, dual and plural.
3. The adjective, as can be observed in the examples, must agree with the noun it describes in gender and in number.

Examples:

1. Indefinite S.F.P.:
 a. Excellent authors — مُؤَلِّفَاتٌ مُمْتَازَاتٌ
 b. Industrious students — طَالِبَاتٌ مُجْتَهِدَاتٌ
 c. Respected teachers — مُعَلِّمَاتٌ مُحْتَرَمَاتٌ
2. a. Definite S.F.P.:
 a. The sincere foreigners — اَلْأَجْنَبِيَّاتُ الْمُخْلِصَاتُ
 b. The just partners — اَلشَّرِيكَاتُ الْعَادِلَاتُ
 c. The friendly girls — اَلْبَنَاتُ الْأَنِيسَاتُ

New Vocabulary:

A criminal	مُجْرِمٌ	Respected	مُحْتَرَمٌ
A foreigner	أَجْنَبِيٌّ	Sick	مَرِيضٌ
A grandfather	جَدٌّ	Busy	مَشْغُولٌ
Waiting	مُنْتَظِرٌ	Standing	قَائِمٌ
A Libyan	لِيبِيٌّ	A Tunisian	تُونُسِيٌّ

Exercise 26:

1. Translate into Arabic:

a.	The clever criminals (f.)	f.	Respected ladies
b.	Inactive workers (f.)	g.	A beautiful girl
c.	Two successful students (f.)	h.	The angry mother
d.	The hardworking doctors (f.)	i.	Two sad sisters
e.	Two cooks (f.)	j.	Honest believers (f.)

2. Translate into English:

(١) أَيْنَ الْمُجْرِمَاتُ الْكَافِرَاتُ ؟
(٢) اَلْمُسْلِمَاتُ الْمَشْغُولَاتُ
(٣) أَيْنَ الْجَدَّاتُ الْأَنِيسَاتُ ؟
(٤) مِنْ أَيْنَ الْخَبَّازَاتُ ؟
(٥) مَنِ اللَّاعِبَاتُ الْفَاضِلَاتُ ؟
(٦) اَلْمُشْرِكَاتُ غَبِيَّاتٌ
(٧) مُهَنْدِسَاتٌ أَجْنَبِيَّاتٌ
(٨) الطَّبِيبَاتُ الْمُحْتَرَمَاتُ فِي الْعِيَادَةِ
(٩) اَلْمُدِيرَاتُ الْبَخِيلَاتُ
(١٠) اَلْوَالِدَاتُ اللَّطِيفَاتُ

3. Change the following phrases to the plural:

(١) أَجْنَبِيَّةٌ مُحْتَرَمَةٌ
(٢) مُشْرِكَةٌ مَاكِرَةٌ
(٣) اَلْجَنُوبُ إِفْرِيقِيُّ الصَّالِحُ
(٤) اَلْمُهَنْدِسَةُ الْمُجِدَّةُ
(٥) اَلْبِنْتُ اللَّطِيفَةُ
(٦) خَلَّاقَةٌ مَاهِرَةٌ
(٧) لِيبِيٌّ مُجْتَهِدٌ
(٨) اَلْمُسَافِرَةُ الْأَمْرِيكِيَّةُ
(٩) اَلْمُرْشِدُ الْمُسْلِمُ
(١٠) تِلْمِيذَةٌ أَنِيسَةٌ

4. Complete with suitable words:

(١) اَلْأُسْتَاذَاتُ الْأَجْنَبِيَّاتُ ؟
(٢) اَلْهِنْدِيَّاتُ حَاضِرَاتٌ
(٣) أَيْنَ الْمُخْلِصَاتُ ؟
(٦) اَلسَّيِّدَاتُ الْبَيْتِ
(٧) أَيْنَ الصَّالِحَاتُ ؟
(٨) اَلْمُمَرِّضَاتُ فِي

(٤) هَلْ كَرِيمَاتٌ ؟ (٩) فِي الْمَطْبَخِ

(٥) الْمُسْتَمِعَاتُ (١٠) الزَّائِرَاتُ ؟

5. Correct the mistakes:

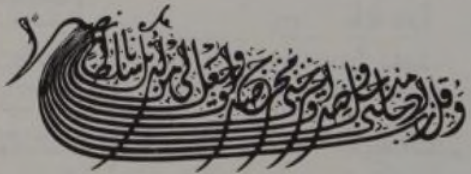
(١) الْمُدَرِّسُونَ مَوْجُودَاتٌ (٦) الْحَقِيبَتَانِ مُعْلَقَانِ

(٢) الزَّائِرَاتُ أَجْنَبِيَّةٌ (٧) الطَّالِبَاةُ الْمُجْتَهِدَاتُ

(٣) هَلِ الْكَافِرُونَ مَاكِرَانِ ؟ (٨) الْمُفَتِّشَاتُ الْغَائِبُونَ

(٤) مِنْ إِبْنَ الشَّرِيكَاتُ الْمُجِدَّةُ ؟ (٩) الْمُتَّهَمَتَانِ الْحَاضِرَاتُ

(٥) عِنْدَهُ كُتُبٌ مَكْسُورَةٌ (١٠) الْمُجْرِمَاتُ الْكَافِرَةُ



The Nominal Sentence: Sound Fem. Pl.

اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْإِسْمِيَّةُ : جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمُ

The rules for the singular, dual and S.M.P. in the "nominal sentence" are the same in the case of the sound feminine plural.

اَلْإِنْكْلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
1. Smiling ladies	سَيِّدَاتٌ مُبْتَسِمَاتٌ
2. The smiling ladies	اَلسَّيِّدَاتُ الْمُبْتَسِمَاتُ
3. The ladies are smiling.	اَلسَّيِّدَاتُ مُبْتَسِمَاتٌ

Explanation:

1. In examples 1 and 2, the indefinite and definite phrases of the S.F.P. are presented.
2. The last example is the nominal sentence of the S.F.P. The subject " اَلسَّيِّدَاتُ " is definite and feminine but its predicate " مُبْتَسِمَاتٌ " is indefinite and feminine plural.

Examples:

1. The inspectresses are laughing. اَلْمُفَتِّشَاتُ ضَاحِكَاتٌ
2. The lecturers are returning. اَلْمُحَاضِرَاتُ رَاجِعَاتٌ

3. The girls are thankful. اَلْبَنَاتُ شَاكِرَاتٌ

4. The aunts are going. اَلْخَالَاتُ ذَاهِبَاتٌ

5. The married ladies are smiling. اَلْمُتَزَوِّجَاتُ مُبْتَسِمَاتٌ

New Vocabulary:

An uncle (paternal)	عَمٌّ	Laughing	ضَاحِكٌ
An uncle (maternal)	خَالٌ	Understanding	فَاهِمٌ
Returning	رَاجِعٌ	A cultured person	مُثَقَّفٌ
Religious	مُتَدَيِّنٌ	A married man	مُتَزَوِّجٌ
An Iraqi	عِرَاقِيٌّ	A Kuwayti	كُوَيْتِيٌّ

Exercise 27:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. The nurses (f.) are present.
 b. The Iraqis (f.) are laughing.
 c. Are the players (f.) absent?
 d. The aunts are thankful.
 e. Where are the tailors (f.)?
 f. The understanding teachers (f.).
 g. Are the Kuwaytis (f.) polite?
 h. The hypocrites are returning.
 i. Who are the excellent servants?
 j. The students (f.) are cultured.

2. Translate into English:

(١) اَلتِّلْمِيذَاتُ نَظِيفَاتٌ
(٢) اَلْمُدِيرَاتُ مُتَدَيِّنَاتٌ
(٣) مِنْ أَيْنَ السَّيِّدَاتُ الْفَاهِمَاتُ ؟
(٤) اَلْمُشْرِكَاتُ مُمَرِّضَاتٌ
(٥) إِلَى أَيْنَ الْمُسَافِرَاتُ ذَاهِبَاتٌ ؟
(٦) هَلِ الطِّفْلَاتُ مُؤَدَّبَاتٌ
(٧) أَيْنَ الْمُؤْمِنَاتُ الْكَرِيمَاتُ ؟
(٨) هَلِ الْكُوَيْتِيَّاتُ جَمِيلَاتٌ ؟
(٩) اَلْمُجْرِمَاتُ الْمُتَّهَمَاتُ غَالِيَاتٌ
(١٠) اَلْمُتَزَوِّجَاتُ مُسْلِمَاتٌ

3. Correct the following sentences:

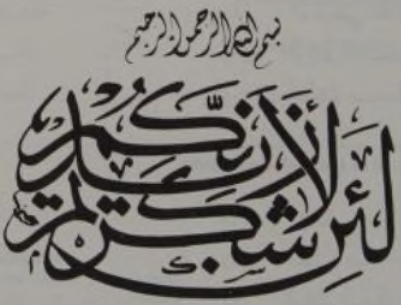
(١) هَلِ السَّاعَةُ مَكْسُورٌ
(٢) مِنْ أَيْنَ الزَّعِيمَانِ قَادِمَاتٌ ؟
(٣) اَلْعَامِلَتَانِ ضَعِيفَةٌ
(٤) اَلْبَنَاتُ بَاسِمَتَانِ
(٥) اَلْكَاتِبَاتُ مُجِدٌّ
(٦) هَلِ الْمُؤَلِّفَانِ لَطِيفَتَانِ ؟
(٧) اَلْعِرَاقِيَّةُ أَنِيسَاتٌ
(٨) اَلْمُجْرِمَتَيْنِ الْغَائِبَتَانِ
(٩) اَلْوَالِدَةُ مُسْلِمَتَانِ
(١٠) اَلْعَمَّاتُ صَاحِكَانِ

4. Give the plural of the following words:

(١) اَلْمُتَوَاضِعَةُ
(٢) اَلْمُؤْمِنَةُ الْمُبْتَسِمَةُ
(٣) اَلْكَافِرَةُ عَدُوَّةٌ
(٤) اَلْمُجْرِمَةُ مُشْرِكَةٌ
(٥) اَلْمَكْتَبَةُ
(٦) كَرِيمَةٌ
(٧) اَلطَّالِبَةُ غَنِيَّةٌ
(٨) اَلْخَالَةُ اَلْبَخِيلَةُ
(٩) جَامِعَةٌ
(١٠) اَلْمَحَطَّةُ

5. Change the following adjectival phrases into nominal sentences:

(١) اَلْمُدَرِّسَاتُ الرَّاجِعَاتُ
(٢) أُسْتَاذَاتٌ مُخْلِصَاتٌ
(٣) اَلْعَدُوَّاتُ الْمُجْرِمَاتُ
(٤) اَلْبَنَاتُ الصَّادِقَاتُ
(٥) مُؤْمِنَاتٌ مُحْتَرَمَاتٌ
(٦) صَدِيقَاتٌ أَنِيسَاتٌ
(٧) مُعَلِّمَاتٌ مُجِدَّاتٌ
(٨) تِلْمِيذَاتٌ ذَكِيَّاتٌ
(٩) اَلْمُشْرِكَاتُ الْمَاكِرَاتُ
(١٠) اَلْمُحَاضِرَاتُ الْمُمْتَازَاتُ



The Conjunctions

حُرُوفُ الْعَطْفِ

The conjunctions are particles which join sentences, phrases or words together. They include " وَ " and " أَمْ ".

		اَلْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
1.	a.	An apple and a banana	تُفَّاحَةٌ وَ مَوْزَةٌ
	b.	The big box	اَلصُّنْدُقُ الْكَبِيرُ
		and the light parcel.	وَ الطَّرْدُ الْخَفِيفُ
2.	a.	The sad ladies or	اَلسَّيِّدَاتُ الْحَزِينَاتُ أَمِ
		the happy teachers?	الْمُعَلِّمَاتُ السَّعِيدَاتُ ؟
	b.	Is he clean or dirty?	هَلْ هُوَ نَظِيفٌ أَمْ وَسِخٌ ؟

Explanation:

1. In (1.a) the conjunction is used to join two simple nouns.
2. In examples (1.b) and (2.b), two phrases are joined together by the conjunctions " وَ " and " أَمْ " respectively.
3. In the last example (2.b) two adjectives are joined.

Examples:

1. a. A classroom and a laboratory — فَصْلٌ وَ مُخْتَبَرٌ

 b. The professor and the teacher — اَلْأُسْتَاذُ وَ الْمُعَلِّمُ

مَسْجِدٌ نَظِيفٌ وَ مَدْرَسَةٌ وَسِخَةٌ

2. a. A clean mosque and a dirty school

 b. Is the room new or old? — هَلِ الْغُرْفَةُ جَدِيدَةٌ أَمْ قَدِيمَةٌ ؟

اَلسَّيَّارَةُ سَلِيمَةٌ وَ الْحَافِلَةُ مُعَطَّلَةٌ

3. a. The car is sound and the bus is broken.

هَلِ الْأُمُّ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ أَمْ فِي الْحَمَّامِ ؟

 b. Is the mother in the kitchen or in the bathroom?

هَلْ هِيَ ذَاهِبَةٌ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ أَمْ إِلَى الْجَامِعَةِ ؟

 c. Is she going to the school or to the university?

New Vocabulary:

An apple	تُفَّاحَةٌ	A letter	خِطَابٌ
An orange	بُرْتُقَالَةٌ	Milk	لَبَنٌ
A bathroom	حَمَّامٌ	A watermelon	بَطِّيخٌ
Sound	سَلِيمٌ	A box	صُنْدُوقٌ
A banana	مَوْزَةٌ	A bottle	زُجَاجَةٌ

Exercise 28:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. A father and a mother
 b. The house and the garden
 c. The hardworking husband and the active wife
 d. A generous friend
 e. Is Khadija a dressmaker or a teacher?
 f. Are you going to the library or to the office?
 g. Are you a listener or a speaker?
 h. Is the American rich or poor?
 i. Is he a disbeliever or a polytheist?
 j. How are the two boys and the two girls?

2. Translate into English:

(١) تُفَّاحَةٌ وَ بُرْتُقَالَةٌ

(٢) اَللَّبَنُ فِي الثَّلَّاجَةِ

(٣) اَلطَّبِيبُ وَ الْمُمَرِّضَةُ فِي الْعِيَادَةِ

(٤) هَلْ عِنْدَكَ سَيَّارَةٌ أَمْ دَرَّاجَةٌ ؟

(٥) اَلْفُسْتَانُ وَ التُّنُّورَةُ فِي الدُّولَابِ

(٦) هَلْ هٰذَا قَدِيمٌ أَمْ جَدِيدٌ ؟

(٧) هَلْ اَنْتِ ذَاهِبَةٌ اِلَى مَكَّةَ الْمُكَرَّمَةِ أَمْ اِلَى الْمَدِينَةِ الْمُنَوَّرَةِ ؟

(٨) اَلرَّجُلُ الْقَوِيُّ وَ الْوَلَدُ الضَّعِيفُ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ

(٩) هَلِ الْحَقِيبَةُ فِي الدُّرْجِ أَمْ فِي الصُّنْدُوقِ ؟

(١٠) هَلِ الْمَقَالَةُ فِي الْجَرِيدَةِ أَمْ فِي الْمَجَلَّةِ ؟

3. Give the opposite of the underlined words:

(١) اَلصُّنْدُوقُ الْكَبِيرُ

(٢) اَلسَّيِّدَاتُ الْحَزِينَاتُ

(٣) اَلْبِنْتَانِ الْجَمِيلَتَانِ

(٤) اَلْوَلَدُ وَسِخٌ

(٥) اَلْمُؤْمِنَانِ قَوِيَّانِ

(٦) اَلْمُدِيرُ الضَّعِيفُ

(٧) اَلْمَرْاَةُ بَخِيلَةٌ

(٨) هِيَ فَقِيرَةٌ

(٩) اَلطِّفْلُ الطَّوِيلُ

(١٠) اَلشَّارِعُ الْوَاسِعُ

4. Re-arrange the following words to make meaningfnl sentences:

(١) فِي ، وَ ، اَلْقَلَمُ ، اَلدُّرْجِ ، اَلْمِسْطَرَةُ ، هَلْ ، ؟

(٢) ذَاهِبُونَ ، هَلْ ، أَمْ ، اِلَى ، اِلَى ، اَلشَّرْقِ ، اَلْغَرْبِ ، اَلْمُسَافِرُونَ ، ؟

(٣) اَلرَّفُّ ، اَلْكُوبُ ، اَلْفِنْجَانُ ، وَ ، عَلَى

(٤) اَيْنَ ، قَادِمَانِ ، اَلطَّالِبَانِ ، مِنْ ، ؟

(٥) اَلْمُخْلِصَاتُ ، اَلْمَسْجِدِ ، فِي ، اَلْكَبِيرِ ، اَلْمُسْلِمَاتُ

(٦) اَلْمَدْرَسَةِ ، هُوَ ، اَلَى ، ذَاهِبٌ

(٧) لَيْلَةٌ ، هٰذِهِ ، وَ ، ذٰلِكَ ، بَارِدٌ ، يَوْمٌ ، حَارَّةٌ

(٨) فِي ، وَ ، الْمِنْضَدَةُ ، الْمَكْتَبُ ، الْفَصْلِ

(٩) عِنْدَكَ ، هَلْ ، حِصَانٌ ، حِمَارٌ ، وَ ، ؟

(١٠) سَيَّارَةٌ ، عِنْدِي ، سَلِيمَةٌ ، نَعَمْ

5. Vocalize:

(١) عندها فستان جديد وتنورة قديمة

(٢) لا ، اسمي سليمان و اسمها سلمى

(٣) التلميذات الذكيات في الصفّ

(٤) من أين الممرّضات الأجنبيّات ؟

(٥) هل المستمعون أم المترجمون في المختبر ؟

(٦) الزائرون الكثيرون قادمون من مكة المكرمة

(٧) هل الطبيبات المجتهدات في العيادة ؟

(٨) الأستاذان المجدّان ذاهبان إلى المكتبة

(٩) كتابي الجديد في الغرفة

(١٠) الجامعة مغلقة و المسجد مفتوح



LESSON 29 الدرس ٢٩

The Perfect Tense Verb and the Accusative Case

أَلْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي والْمَنْصُوبُ

The verb is a doing word: it indicates action. But it also indicates whether the action is complete, (the "past" tense, or, in Arabic, the "perfect verb": أَلْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي). This lesson will first of all deal with the verb in the perfect tense.

A. The Perfect Tense

	مَعْنَاهَا	أَلْجُمْلَةُ
1.	Muhammad wrote.	كَتَبَ مُحَمَّدٌ
2.	Khadija wrote.	كَتَبَتْ خَدِيجَةُ
3.	You (m.) wrote.	كَتَبْتَ (أَنْتَ)
4.	You (f.) wrote.	كَتَبْتِ (أَنْتِ)
5.	I (m. & f.) wrote.	كَتَبْتُ (أَنَا)

B. The Accusative Case

1.	Muhammad wrote *an article.*	كَتَبَ مُحَمَّدٌ مَقَالَةً
2.	Khadija wrote *a book.*	كَتَبَتْ خَدِيجَةُ كِتَابًا
3.	You wrote *the lesson.*	كَتَبْتَ الدَّرسَ
4.	You wrote *the sentence.*	كَتَبْتِ الْجُمْلَةَ
5.	I wrote *a long letter.*	كَتَبْتُ رِسَالَةً طَوِيلَةً
6.	I wrote *the long letter and a difficult word.*	كَتَبْتُ الرِّسَالَةَ الطَّوِيلَةَ وَكَلِمَةً صَعْبَةً

Explanation:
Table A: The Perfect Tense.

1. Only the singular form of the verb in the perfect tense is dealt with in this lesson.
2. The most important form is the three-letter root of the verb, consisting usually of three consonants: in the verb كَتَبَ they are ك, ت, and ب. This form, together with the vowels (اَلْحَرَكَاتُ) has a twofold function since it shows:

 a) the root of the verb كتب and

 b) the form "he wrote". كَتَبَ

The dictionary will tell us that كَتَبَ means "to write", but we now know that it also means "he wrote", i.e. the simplest form of the perfect verb.

3. Thus, when analysing the verb كَتَبَ we notice that it is masculine, singular, and in the third person.
4. In sentences 2, 3, 4 and 5, you will notice that an extra letter is added to the end of the root كتب : this letter is a tā': ت and is known as the subject marker. In addition, you will have noticed that this tā' ت is differently vowelled in each of the sentences. It is this combination of tā' ت plus a short vowel either a ḍamma ـُ , a fatḥa ـَ , or a kasra ـِ which indicates the subject:

تُ	(tu) : I
تَ	(ta) : You (m.)
تِ	(ti) : You (f.)
تْ	(at) : She

5. In sentence 1 the subject of the sentence is *Muḥammad:* مُحَمَّدٌ and in sentence 2, *Khadīja,* خَدِيجَةُ . It will be noticed that both these names end in a ḍamma or in ḍammatāni. This form of the noun is called the nominative and indicates *who or what* is performing the action of the sentence.

6. In the sentences denoting "you" (m. and f.), the pronouns أَنْتَ and أَنْتِ are in brackets: this indicates that they are not absolutely necessary. The form كَتَبْتَ shows without any doubt that the subject is أَنْتَ . You will have noticed that the subject markers تَ and تِ have the same form as the endings of the pronouns أَنْتَ and أَنْتِ

7. The middle letter of the root does not always take a fatḥa as in the verbs كَتَبَ and قَرَأَ . Many verbs take a ḍamma: كَبُرَ "he grew"; or a kásra: فَهِمَ "he understood", شَرِبَتْ "she drank". These patterns will be discussed in a later lesson.

8. If the third person singular is followed by a definite noun, then a kasra is added to the verb as a helping vowel:

She drank شَرِبَتْ

but

The girl drank شَرِبَتِ الْبِنْتُ

She read قَرَأَتْ

but

The pupil read قَرَأَتِ التِّلْمِيذَةُ

Examples:

1. a. He heard. سَمِعَ

 b. Khalid studied. دَرَسَ خَالِدٌ

 c. Maryam ate and drank. أَكَلَتْ مَرْيَمُ وَ شَرِبَتْ

 d. You (f.) explained and I understood. شَرَحْتِ وَ فَهِمْتُ

 e. Ali wrote and Fatima read. كَتَبَ عَلِيٌّ وَقَرَأَتْ فَاطِمَةُ

Table B: The Accusative Case

1. When we perform an action, often this action is done *to* or *on* somebody or something, e.g. "I wrote *a book*". The words "a book" answer the question "*What* did I write?" Or, in the sentence "He hit *Fatima*", the word "Fatima" anwers the question "*Whom* did he hit?" The recipient of the action is called the direct object (اَلْمَفْعُوْلُ بِهِ).
2. In sentence 1 you will notice that the word *article* ends in fatḥatāni: مَقَالَةً . The direct object of the verb always ends in either a fatḥa (definite) or fatḥatāni (indefinite). This form is called the accusative case of the noun. The direct object is always in the accusative case.
3. If the direct object is definite, the accusative has only one fatḥa: اَلْمَقَالَةَ . If it is indefinite, the accusative has fatḥatāni: مَقَالَةً .
4. In sentence 2, we see that in addition to the fatḥatāni an alif ا is attached to the noun: كِتَابًا .

 Rule: In all masucline nouns, and in feminine nouns that do not end in ṭā' marbūṭa, the indefinite accusative case has ا attached to the noun:

 كِتَابًا ، دَرْسًا

 بِنْتًا ، أُمًّا

 أُخْتًا ، سُوْقًا

 This occurs only when the noun is indefinite. Compare:

 اَلْكِتَابَ and كِتَابًا

 اَلدَّرْسَ and دَرْسًا

 اَلسُّوْقَ and سُوْقًا

5. Sentence 5 in table B also contains an adjective. Notice that since it refers to the direct object, it too takes the ac-

cusative ending: الرِّسَالَةَ الطَّوِيلَةَ and صَحْبَةُ (كَلِمَةَ) . From this we infer that an adjective always takes the same case-ending as the noun it modifies:

The *tall man* struck *the small boy*

ضَرَبَ الرَّجُلُ الطَّوِيلُ الْوَلَدَ الصَّغِيرَ

6. The Arabic grammatical terms for verb, subject and object are فِعْل فَاعِل مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ respectively. The verbal sentence—one which commences with a verb—is known as الْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ

7. Because the subject and the direct object are designated by damma and fatha respectively, there is no confusion as to which noun is the subject and which is the direct object in the sentence: ضَرَبَ مُحَمَّدٌ خَالِدٌ (Muhammad beat Khalid). This could also be written as: ضَرَبَ خَالِدًا مُحَمَّدٌ without the meaning changing, although the latter word-order is unusual and would imply a slightly different emphasis than in the first, more usual, sentence.

Examples:

2. a. She read the new book. قَرَأَتِ الْكِتَابَ الْجَدِيدَ

 b. He explained the difficult lesson. شَرَحَ الدَّرْسَ الصَّعْبَ

 c. You (f.) read the article and the lesson. قَرَأْتِ الْمَقَالَةَ وَ الدَّرْسَ

 d. I read a new book. قَرَأْتُ كِتَابًا جَدِيدًا

 e. He drank the coffee. شَرِبَ الْقَهْوَةَ

New Vocabulary:

He wrote	كَتَبَ	He read	قَرَأَ
He studied	دَرَسَ	He explained	شَرَحَ
He understood	فَهِمَ	He heard	سَمِعَ
He ate	أَكَلَ	He drank	شَرِبَ
He carried	حَمَلَ	He knew	عَرَفَ

Exercise 29:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. I knew the boy.
 b. The pupil understood the lesson.
 c. The servant (f.) drank the milk.
 d. You knew the teacher and the professor.
 e. I heard a sad story.
 f. You (f.) carried the heavy parcel.
 g. The teacher wrote the article.
 h. I ate the orange.
 i. I read the book.
 j. You wrote the letter in the library.

2. Translate into English:

(١) عَرَفْتُ الدَّرْسَ

(٢) أَكَلْتُ الْبُرْتُقَالَةَ وَ الْمَوْزَةَ

(٣) حَمَلَ الطَّرْدَ الثَّقِيلَ

(٤) أَنَا فَهِمْتُ الْقِصَّةَ الْحَزِينَةَ

(٥) هَلْ شَرَحَ الْجُمْلَةَ الصَّعْبَةَ ؟

(٦) شَرِبَ الْوَلَدُ الْمَاءَ وَ الْعَصِيرَ

(٧) أَيْنَ أَكَلْتَ الطَّعَامَ ؟

(٨) هَلْ كَتَبْتَ الْخِطَابَ الطَّوِيلَ فِي الدَّفْتَرِ ؟

(٩) نَعَمْ ، هِيَ سَمِعَتِ الْقِصَّةَ

(١٠) لَا ، دَرَسَتْ سَلْوَى فِي الْمَكْتَبَةِ

3. Choose the appropriate word from those given in brackets:

(١) (كَتَبَتْ / شَرِبَتْ) الْقَهْوَةَ

(٢) فَهِمَ الْأُسْتَاذُ (الْحَقِيبَةُ / الْقِصَّةَ)

(٣) شَرَحَ (الْمُعَلِّمُ / الْمَدْرَسَةُ) دَرْسًا

(٤) هَلْ (عَرَفْتُ / عَرَفْتَ) السَّائِقَ ؟

(٥) أَنْتِ شَرَحْتِ (الْجَرِيدَةَ / الْمَقَالَةَ)

(٦) قَرَأَتِ السَّيِّدَةُ (الْمُثَقَّفَةُ / الْمُثَقَّفَ) الْمَجَلَّةَ

(٧) (مِنْ / مَنْ) أَيْنَ سَمِعْتَ الْقِصَّةَ ؟

(٨) (هَلْ / مَا) سَمِعْتَ الْخَبَرَ ؟

(٩) مَنْ أَكَلَ (التُّفَّاحَةَ / الْمَاءَ) ؟

(١٠) حَمَلَ الصُّنْدُوقَ (الثَّقِيلَةَ / الْخَفِيفَ)

4. Correct the form of the verb where necessary:

(١) أَنَا كَتَبَتِ الْخِطَابَ

(٢) هِيَ قَرَأَ الْجَرِيدَةَ

(٣) هَلْ هُوَ فَهِمْتَ الْقِصَّةَ ؟

(٤) لِمَاذَا أَنْتِ شَرِبْتَ اللَّبَنَ ؟

(٥) هِيَ أَكَلَ تُفَّاحَةً

(٦) هَلْ أَنْتَ سَمِعْتِ الْمُدِيرَ ؟

(٧) هَلْ أَنْتِ دَرَسَ الْكِتَابَ ؟

(٨) هِيَ كَتَبْتَ عَلَى السَّبُّورَةِ

(٩) أَنَا فَهِمْتَ الْمَقَالَةَ

(١٠) إِلَى أَيْنَ أَنْتَ حَمَلَ الطَّرْدَ ؟

5. Complete with appropriate words:

(١) الْمُعَلِّمُ الدَّرْسَ

(٢) دَرَسَتْ فَاطِمَةُ

(٣) فَهِمْتَ الرِّسَالَةَ

(٤) قَرَأْتُ الْمَجَلَّةَ الْمَكْتَبَةِ

(٥) حَمَلْتَ الصُّنْدُوقَ ؟

(٦) أَيْنَ كَتَبْتَ الْخِطَابَ ؟

(٧) شَرِبَتْ الْمَاءَ

(٨) هَلْ فِي الدَّفْتَرِ

(٩) كَتَبَ التِّلْمِيذُ الذَّكِيُّ مَقَالَةً فِي

(١٠) أَلْتَ الْقِصَّةَ



The Imperfect Tense Verb

اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ

The present or imperfect tense indicates that the action expressed by the verb is incomplete. It differs from the perfect tense which expresses a completed action.

		مَعْنَاهَا	اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ
1.	a.	He writes.	هُوَ يَكْتُبُ
	b.	He writes the book.	هُوَ يَكْتُبُ الْكِتَابَ
2.	a.	She writes.	هِيَ تَكْتُبُ
	b.	She writes the article.	هِيَ تَكْتُبُ الْمَقَالَةَ
3.	a.	You write.	أَنْتَ تَكْتُبُ
	b.	You write the story.	أَنْتَ تَكْتُبُ الْقِصَّةَ
4.	a.	You (f.) write.	أَنْتِ تَكْتُبِينَ
	b.	You (f.) write the play.	أَنْتِ تَكْتُبِينَ الْمَسْرَحِيَّةَ
5.	a.	I (m. & f.) write.	أَنَا أَكْتُبُ
	b.	I write the letter.	أَنَا أَكْتُبُ الرِّسَالَةَ

Explanation:

1. Only the singular form of the imperfect verb is dealt with in this lesson.
2. The imperfect verb in Arabic differs from the perfect. It has the subject-markers prefixed and not suffixed (except "you" f.s.),as in the case of the perfect.
3. The subject-markers are different letters. They are the "ya' ي " which indicates "he", the "ta' ت " which stands for "she" and "you" (m. and f.), and the "alif ا " which represents the "I". Note that the feminine singular has at the end of the verb a "yā' " and a "nūn"; This will assist to differentiate between "She writes تَكْتُبُ ", "You write تَكْتُبُ " and "You (f.) write تَكْتُبِينَ ".
4. The vowel signs of the imperfect verb also differ from those of the perfect verb.
5. Note that the vowel-sign on the middle letter of the root, i.e. "ت" in the above example, will not apply to all verbs. Some of them will have a "kasra", others a "fatḥa" and some a "ḍamma".

He returned.	رَجَعَ	He returns.	يَرْجِعُ
He went.	ذَهَبَ	He goes.	يَذْهَبُ
He wrote.	كَتَبَ	He writes.	يَكْتُبُ

6. The perfect tense in Arabic corresponds to the present perfect tense in English as well: يَكْتُبُ means "he writes" and "he is writing".
7. Note that if the verb begins with an alif ا , in the imperfect tense the alif representing "I" assimilates with the alif of the verb; a madd (lengthening sign) " ~ " is written above the alif. This is because in Arabic two alifs cannot be written together. Example:

أَكَلَ	- to eat	آكُلُ	= I eat.
أَخَذَ	- to take	آخُذُ	= I take.
أَمَرَ	- to order	آمُرُ	= I order.

Examples:

1. a. He studies the lesson. يَدْرُسُ الدَّرْسَ
 b. She enters the laboratory. تَدْخُلُ الْمُخْتَبَرَ
 c. You eat the food. تَأْكُلُ الطَّعَامَ
 d. You (f) explain the problem. تَشْرَحِينَ الْمَسْأَلَةَ
 e. I thank the servant. أَشْكُرُ الْخَادِمَ
2. a. He reads and she listens. يَقْرَأُ وَ هِيَ تَسْمَعُ
 b. You hear and you (f.) write. أَنْتَ تَسْمَعُ وَ أَنْتِ تَكْتُبِينَ

هُوَ يَأْخُذُ تُفَّاحَةً وَ هِيَ تَأْكُلُ الْبَطِّيخَ

3. a. He takes an apple and she eats the watermelon.

تَقْرَأُ الدَّرْسَ الصَّعْبَ وَأَفْهَمُ الْقِصَّةَ

 b. You read the difficult lesson and I understand the story.

New Vocabulary:

He succeeded.	نَجَحَ	He failed.	فَشِلَ
He worked.	عَمِلَ	He went.	ذَهَبَ
Juice	عَصِيرٌ	He took.	أَخَذَ
Tea	شَايٌ	He entered.	دَخَلَ
He returned.	رَجَعَ	He ordered.	أَمَرَ

Exercise 30:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. She failed the examination.
 b. I am studying the book.
 c. Muhammad returns from the school.
 d. The servant (f.) goes to the market.
 e. Do you drink tea?
 f. He is working in the park.
 g. I read the newspaper in the room.
 h. The boy is eating the bread in the kithchen.
 i. You drink the juice.
 j. He understands the sad story.

2. Translate into English:

(١) نَعَمْ ، هُوَ يَقْرَأُ الْمَقَالَةَ

(٢) لَا ، كَتَبَتْ خَدِيجَةُ الرِّسَالَةَ

(٣) مَنْ دَخَلَ الْبَيْتَ ؟

(٤) هَلْ تَدْرُسُ الدَّرْسَ الْجَدِيدَ ؟

(٥) أَنَا أَشْكُرُ الطَّالِبَةَ

(٦) هَلْ أَخَذْتَ التُّفَّاحَةَ وَ الْبُرْتُقَالَةَ ؟

(٧) تَنْجَحِينَ فِي الْاِخْتِبَارِ

(٨) شَرِبْتُ الْعَصِيرَ وَ الشَّايَ فِي الْمَطْعَمِ

(٩) أَمَرَ الْأُسْتَاذُ الطَّالِبَ بِالْعَمَلِ

(١٠) يَرْجِعُ الْمُدَرِّسُ مِنَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ

3. Rewrite the following sentences changing the gender of the words underlined:

(١) هَلْ تَشْرَحِينَ الدَّرْسَ ؟

(٢) يَعْرِفُ الْحَلَّاقَةَ

(٣) الْمَرْأَةُ تَأْخُذُ السَّيَّارَةَ وَ الرَّجُلُ يَأْخُذُ الْحَافِلَةَ

(٤) سَمِعْتُ التِّلْمِيذَةَ فِي الْفَصْلِ

(٥) أَنْتَ تَشْرَبُ اللَّبَنَ وَ الْعَصِيرَ

(٦) إِلَى أَيْنَ الطِّفْلَةُ ذَاهِبَةٌ ؟

(٧) اَلْوَلَدُ قَادِمٌ مِنَ الْمَسْجِدِ

(٨) هِيَ تَعْمَلُ فِي الشَّرِكَةِ

(٩) يَدْخُلُ الْغُرْفَةَ الْكَبِيرَةَ

(١٠) حَمَلْتِ الْكُرْسِيَّ الثَّقِيلَ

4. Change the verb into the Imperfect form:

(١) فَشِلْتُ فِي الْاِمْتِحَانِ

(٢) دَرَسَ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ

(٣) رَجَعْتِ مِنَ الْمَصْنَعِ

(٤) عَمِلْتَ فِي الْمَطْعَمِ

(٥) أَكَلَ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ

(٦) سَمِعْتُ الْقِصَّةَ

(٧) أَمَرْتِ التِّلْمِيذَ بِالْخُرُوجِ

(٨) دَخَلْتِ الْفَصْلَ

(٩) شَرِبْتُ الْمَاءَ

(١٠) أَخَذَتِ الْمُعَلِّمَةُ الْمِسْطَرَةَ

5. Vocalize the following:

(١) المنافقون الماكرون ذاهبون إلى القرية

(٢) يذهب الرجل إلى النهر

(٣) رجعت الأستاذة من الجامعة

(٤) السّورتان النظيفتان مفيدتان

(٥) نعم ، عندها المفتاح

(٦) لا ، عندي فستان و تنّورة

(٧) هل القدر و الصحن في الفرن ؟

(٨) كتب المجرم على الجدار

(٩) هل تشربين العصير أم القهوة ؟

(١٠) من أين أخذت الساعة ؟

The Iḍāfa-Construction

اَلْإِضَافَةُ

This construction expresses possession. It consists of two nouns which are attached to one another and this follows specific grammatical rules.

	اَلْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةُ	اَلْعَرَبِيَّةُ
1.	The Messenger of Allah	رَسُولُ اللهِ
2.	The humble son of the teacher	اِبْنُ الْمُعَلِّمَةِ الْمُتَوَاضِعُ
3.	How is the condition of the student?	كَيْفَ حَالُ الطَّالِبِ ؟
4.	The key of the door is new.	مِفْتَاحُ الْبَابِ جَدِيدٌ
5.	That is the house of Allah.	ذٰلِكَ بَيْتُ اللهِ
6.	She wrote the homework.	كَتَبَتْ واجِبَ الْبَيْتِ

Explanation:

1. a. In the first example, the first noun رَسُولُ (the Messenger) is definite but does not take the definite article " اَلْ ".
 b. The second noun اللهِ (Allah) is genitive as indicated by the kasra (—).

2. In the second example, an adjective which refers to the first noun اِبْنٌ (the son) has to follow the Iḍāfa-Construction. Note that it has to take the " اَلْ " in order to agree with " اِبْنٌ ".
3. The Iḍāfa-Construction may be used with interrogative particles, as indicated in the third example.
4. When used in a nominal sentence—the fourth example—the predicate follows the Iḍāfa-Construction and is indefinite.
5. Demonstrative pronouns are also used. It must be stressed that the use of the correct demonstrative pronoun depends on the gender of the first and not the second noun (see examples below).
6. In the last example it occurs in a verbal sentence. Note that the ḍamma on the ب of وَاجِب became a fatḥa (بَ).
7. The two nouns in the Iḍāfa-Construction are said to be in construct state and nothing may come in between them. That is why an adjective referring to the first noun has to follow the Iḍāfa-Construction.

Examples:

1.	a.	The servant of Allah	عَبْدُ اللهِ
	b.	The rector of the university	مُدِيرُ الْجَامِعَةِ
2.	a.	The clever student of the school	طَالِبُ الْمَدْرَسَةِ الذَّكِيُّ
	b.	The beautiful voice of the girl	صَوْتُ الْبِنْتِ الْجَمِيلُ
3.	a.	What is the name of the messenger?	مَا اسْمُ الرَّسُولِ ؟
	b.	Where is the rubber of the pupil?	أَيْنَ مِمْسَحَةُ التِّلْمِيذِ ؟
4.	a.	The library of the institute is big.	مَكْتَبَةُ الْمَعْهَدِ كَبِيرَةٌ
	b.	The student (f.) of the professor is clever.	طَالِبَةُ الْأُسْتَاذِ ذَكِيَّةٌ
5.	a.	This is the daughter of the cook.	هٰذِهِ اِبْنَةُ الطَّبَّاخِ
	b.	That is the baker of the hotel.	ذٰلِكَ خَبَّازُ الْفُنْدُقِ

6. a. You write the examination of the school. تَكْتُبُ اِمْتِحَانَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ
 b. He took the magazine of the lady. أَخَذَ مَجَلَّةَ السَّيِّدَةِ

New Vocabulary:

Allah	أَللهُ	A test	اِخْتِبَارٌ
Bread	خُبْزٌ	A messenger	رَسُولٌ
Coffee	قَهْوَةٌ	A religion	دِينٌ
Islam	اَلْإِسْلَامُ	A servant	عَبْدٌ
An examination	اِمْتِحَانٌ	A voice	صَوْتٌ

Exercise 31:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. The newepaper of the student (f.)
 b. The big bag of the boy
 c. The mother of the child is ill.
 d. That is the page of the book.
 e. Where is the skirt of the lady?
 f. This is the institute of the city.
 g. The university of Tunis
 h. I read the letter of my friend.
 i. The story of the author is long.
 j. She studied the lesson of the teacher (f.)

2. Translate into English:

(١) هَلْ تَشْرَبِينَ الْمَاءَ

(٢) نَعَمْ ، أُخْذُتُ الطَّاوِلَةَ وَ الْكُرْسِيَّ

(٣) لَا ، كَتَبْتُ خِطَابًا قَصِيرًا

(٤) هَلْ حَمَلْتَ الطَّرْدَ إِلَى جَامِعَةِ الْمَغْرِبِ ؟

(٥) هَلْ سَمِعَ الْمُدَرِّسُ السُّؤَالَ ؟

(٦) تَدْرُسُ فِي مَكْتَبَةِ الْمَعْهَدِ

(٧) يَفْشَلُ فِي اخْتِبَارِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ

(٨) فَهِمَ الْمَقَالَةَ

(٩) دَخَلَتِ الْمَرْأَةُ بُسْتَانَ الْمَدِينَةِ

(١٠) يَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْمُخْتَبَرِ

3. Correct the following sentences:

(١) أَنْتَ فَهِمَ الْمُدَرِّسَ

(٢) كَتَبَ الْبَيْتِ فِي

(٣) هُوَ تَسْمَعِينَ الْقِصَّةَ

(٤) تَفْشَلُ الطَّالِبُ فِي الْامْتِحَانَ

(٥) الْمُتَكَلِّمُونَ مَوْجُودَانِ

(٦) الْأُسْتَاذَةُ دَرَسَ الرِّسَالَةَ فِي الصَّالَةِ

(٧) هٰذِهِ كِتَابِي الْمُفِيدُ

(٨) هَلْ أَنَا تَشْرَحِينَ الْخِطَابَ ؟

(٩) يَعْمَلُ الْعَامِلَ فِي الْمَصْنَعِ

(١٠) شَكَرَ الْكَاتِبَ

4. Choose the correct word in brackets:

(١) هٰذِهِ (زَوْجٌ / امْرَأَةٌ)

(٢) عِنْدَهَا (كِتَابٌ / شَارِعٌ)

(٣) تَعْمَلُ (ابْنٌ / الْمُدِيرَةُ) فِي الشَّرِكَةِ

(٤) آخُذُ (مِسْطَرَةً / الطَّالِبَ)

(٥) تَقْرَئِينَ (الْجَرِيدَةَ / الْمَكْتَبَةَ) فِي الْفَصْلِ

(٦) سَمِعْتُ (التِّلْمِيذُ / صَوْتَ) الْمُعَلِّمِ

(٧) دَرَسَ (الدِّينَ / دِينَ) الْإِسْلَامِ

(٨) فَشِلَتِ (الطَّالِبُ / فِي إِمْتِحَانِ) الْجَامِعَةِ

(٩) هَلْ نَجَحْتَ فِي (الْمَدْرَسَةَ / الْاِخْتِبَارِ)

(١٠) هُوَ قَادِمٌ مِنَ (جَامِعَةٌ / الْقَاهِرَةِ)

5. Re-arrange the following words to construct grammatically correct and meaningful sentences:

(١) الْمَدْرَسَةِ ، هَلْ ، هُوَ ، مُعَلِّمٌ ، ؟

(٢) الْوَلَدِ ، الثَّلَّاجَةِ ، فِي ، كُوبُ

(٣) الْمُؤْمِنُ ، الْمَسْجِدَ ، دَخَلَ ، الْمُخْلِصُ

(٤) الْأُسْتَاذُ ، دَرَسَ ، الْمَكْتَبَةِ ، فِي

(٥) مُخْتَبَرِ ، يَذْهَبُ ، الْمَعْهَدِ ، إِلَى

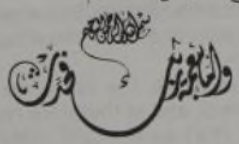
(٦) عَلَى ، الثَّقِيلُ ، الْفَرْنِ ، الْفِنْجَانُ

(٧) السَّائِقَةُ ، فِي ، هَلِ ، الْحَافِلَةِ ، الْجَدِيدَةِ ، ؟

(٨) عَلَى ، الْقِصَّةَ ، السُّبُّورَةِ ، كَتَبَ ، الْمُحَاضِرَةُ

(٩) الْعِبَادَةِ ، فِي ، الْمُجْتَهِدَاتُ ، الْمُمَرِّضَاتُ ، الْكَبِيرَةِ

(١٠) جَدِيدٌ ، الْمُتَوَاضِعُ ، الرَّجُلُ ، مُسْلِمٌ



The Verb and the Attached Pronoun

اَلْفِعْلُ وَ الضَّمِيرُ الْمُتَّصِلُ

In an earlier lesson, the singular attached pronouns were introduced to the nouns. This lesson introduces them to the verb.

		مَعْنَاهَا	اَلْجُمْلَةُ الْفِعْلِيَّةُ
1.	a.	He wrote the letter.	كَتَبَ الرِّسَالَةَ
	b.	He wrote it.	كَتَبَهَا
2.	a.	He carried (I).	حَمَلَ (أَنَا)
	b.	He carried me.	حَمَلَنِي
3.	a.	He remembered (you).	ذَكَرَ (أَنْتَ)
	b.	He remembered you.	ذَكَرَكَ

Explanation:

1. In the first example, the attached pronoun هَا (it) replaces the object of the verb اَلرِّسَالَةَ (the letter) which is feminine. If the object is masculine, then the attached pronoun should be masculine (ـهُ).
2. In the second example, the detached pronoun أَنَا (I) is not used with the verb, and is therefore replaced by the attached pronoun ي (Ya') as in كِتَابِي (My book). But it differs

from the one attached to the noun because it has the letter ـَ attached to it as in حَمَلَني (he carried me).

3. In the last example the detached pronoun أَنْتَ (you) is replaced by the attached pronoun كَ (you).
4. Note that whereas the first example may refer to persons or things, the second and third examples refer to persons only.

Examples:

1. a. He drank it. شَرِبَهُ
 b. She carried me. حَمَلَتْني
 c. You entered it (f.). دَخَلْتَها
 d. You (f.) heard her. سَمِعْتِها
 e. He thanked you. شَكَرَكَ
2. a. Attached pronoun with the perfect verb:
 He knew me. عَرَفَني
 He knew you. عَرَفَكَ
 He knew you (f.). عَرَفَكِ
 He knew him. عَرَفَهُ
 He knew her. عَرَفَها
 b. Attached pronoun with the imperfect verb:
 He knows me. يَعْرِفُني
 He knows you. يَعْرِفُكَ

He knows you (f.).	يَعْرِفُكِ
He knows him.	يَعْرِفُهُ
He knows her.	يَعْرِفُهَا

New Vocabulary:

He remembered.	ذَكَرَ	He lived.	سَكَنَ
He rode.	رَكِبَ	He sat.	جَلَسَ
He went out (from).	خَرَجَ (مِنْ)	He asked.	سَأَلَ
He accepted.	قَبِلَ	He opened.	فَتَحَ
He looked (at).	نَظَرَ (إِلَى)	He thanked.	شَكَرَ

Exercise 32:

1. Translate into Arabic:
 a. He read it.
 b. She thanks the principal.
 c. I ask him.
 d. You remembered her.
 e. You (f.) looked at the bird.
 f. I drank the coffee.
 g. She wrote an article in the magazine.
 h. The teacher studied the book.
 i. You (f.) hear him.
 j. I took the bag of the child.

2. Translate into English:

(١) كَتَبْتُ اِسْمَ الطَّالِبِ

(٢) ذَكَرَ رَسُولَ اللهِ

(٣) أَخَذَهَا مِنَ الْمَطْبَخِ

(٤) هَلْ تَشْرَبِينَ عَصِيرَ الْبُرْتُقَالِ ؟

(٥) نَعَمْ ، أَفْهَمُ الدَّرْسَ

(٦) لَا ، قَرَأْتُهَا فِي الْبُسْتَانِ

(٧) هَلْ تَفْتَحُ بَابَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ ؟

(٨) أَجْلِسُ عَلَى كُرْسِيِّ الْمُدِيرِ

(٩) رَكِبَ الْحِمَارَ فِي الْحَدِيقَةِ

(١٠) خَرَجَتِ الْبِنْتُ مِنَ الْمَعْهَدِ مَسَاءً

3. Replace the underlined word with the correct attached pronoun:

(١) قَبِلْتُ الْكِتَابَ مِنَ الطَّالِبِ

(٢) أَنَا آخُذُ الْمِسْطَرَةَ

(٣) هَلْ تُشْرَحِيْنَ الْإِسْلَامَ؟

(٤) هُوَ يَفْهَمُ الدِّينَ

(٥) أَنْتَ تَكْتُبُ الرِّسَالَةَ

(٦) هَلْ شَكَرْتَ الْأُسْتَاذَ ؟

(٧) هِيَ تَخْرُجُ مِنَ الْغُرْفَةِ

(٨) اَلْقُرْآنُ كِتَابُ اللهِ

(٩) سَلْمَى اِسْمُ الطَّالِبَةِ

(١٠) هُوَ أَمَرَ أَنَا بِالذَّهَابِ إِلَى السُّوقِ

4. Choose the correct word in brackets:

(١) (مَا / أَيْنَ) كَتَبْتَ الْمَقَالَةَ؟
(٢) تَعْمَلُ الْوَالِدَةُ (فِي / عَلَى) الْمَنْزِلِ
(٣) هَلْ (هُوَ / أَنْتَ) فَهِمْتَ الرِّسَالَةَ ؟
(٤) يَشْرَبُ الْقَهْوَةَ (الْحَارَّ / الْبَارِدَةَ)
(٥) أَدْخُلُ (الْفَصْلَ / الْبَيْتَ) لَيْلًا
(٦) آمُرُ (التِّلْمِيذَاتِ / التِّلْمِيذَتَانِ) بِالْجُلُوسِ
(٧) (أَخَذَ / أَخَذَتْ) الْمُعَلِّمُ السَّاعَةَ
(٨) أُحْمِلُ (طَرْدًا / صَنْدُوقًا) إِلَى الْمَكْتَبَةِ
(٩) قَرَأَ (الْجَرِيدَةَ / مَجَلَّةً)
(١٠) آخُذُ الْكِتَابَ (مِنْ / فِي) الدُّرْجِ

5. Vocalize:

(١) التلميذات الناجحات غائبات
(٢) قرأ الطالب مجلّة المدرسة
(٣) اخذها من المكتبة
(٤) فهمها أستاذ المعهد
(٥) يدرس كتاب الله في المسجد
(٦) ركبت الحصان
(٧) يسكن في المدينة
(٨) فتحت باب الفصل
(٩) لا أسمع صوت الأستاذ
(١٠) عملت في مصنع القرية



Revision Exercises

تَمْرِينَاتٌ لِلْمُرَاجَعَةِ

Exercise One

1. Translate into English:

(١) اَلطَّالِبُ فِي الْمُخْتَبَرِ
(٢) هَلْ عِنْدَكَ دَفْتَرٌ وَ قَلَمٌ؟
(٣) كَيْفَ حَالُهُ؟
(٤) دَخَلْتُ مُخْتَبَرَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ
(٥) اَلْمُدِيرُ الْمُجْتَهِدُ فِي الْمَكْتَبَةِ
(٦) هٰذَا مُفَتِّشٌ خَامِلٌ
(٧) هٰذِهِ حَدِيقَةٌ جَمِيلَةٌ
(٨) يَكْتُبُ الدَّرْسَ
(٩) أَشْرَبُ فِنْجَانَ الْقَهْوَةِ
(١٠) اَلْمُجْرِمَانِ الْمَاكِرَانِ فِي الْفُنْدُقِ

2. Complete the following by choosing suitable adjectives from those given in brackets:

(مُفِيدَةٌ ، أَنِيسٌ ، مُخْلِصُونَ ، اَلصَّالِحَاتُ ، اَللَّطِيفَةُ ، اَلْمَكْسُورُ ، اَلْخَامِلُ ، اَلْمُفِيدُ ، مُمْتَازَاتٌ ، اَلشَّيطُونَ)

(١) اَلْكِتَابُ
(٢) اَلسَّيِّدَاتُ
(٣) بَنَاتٌ
(٤) اَلْفِنْجَانُ
(٥) اِبْنٌ
(٦) اَلرَّجُلُ
(٧) مُهَنْدِسُونَ
(٨) اَلْأُخْتُ
(٩) حَافِلَةٌ
(١٠) اَلْمُسْتَمِعُونَ

3. Change the gender:

(١) اَلْمُدَرِّسَاتُ ذَكِيَّاتٌ
(٢) دَرَسَتِ السَّيِّدَةُ
(٣) اَلْوَالِدَةُ الْكَرِيمَةُ وَالْأُخْتُ اللَّطِيفَةُ
(٤) هَلْ هُوَ مُسْلِمٌ؟
(٥) اَلطِّفْلَانِ صَغِيرَانِ
(٦) اَلْمُنَافِقُونَ غَائِبُونَ
(٧) تِلْمِيذٌ نَشِيطٌ
(٨) اَلْأُسْتَاذُ طَيِّبٌ
(٩) اَلطَّالِبَانِ الْمُخْلِصَتَانِ
(١٠) خَرَجَ الزَّوْجُ

4. Correct the following sentences:

(١) اَلْجَامِعَةُ الْكَبِيرَةُ مَشْهُورٌ
(٢) اَلْكَافِرُونَ حَاضِرَاتٌ
(٣) فَتَحْتُ النَّافِذَةَ الْوَاسِعَ
(٤) أَنَا قَبِلْتُ الشُّفَّاحَةُ
(٥) تَعْمَلُ الْعَامِلُ فِي الْمَصْنَعِ
(٦) اَلْمَسْجِدَانِ الْجَدِيدَتَانِ جَمِيلَانِ
(٧) رَجَعَ الْمُتَرْجِمُ مِنَ الْمُخْتَبَرِ
(٨) مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتِ ذَاهِبٌ ؟
(٩) يَكْتُبُ فِي الْهَامِشُ
(١٠) اَلْمِمْسَحَانِ قَدِيمَةٌ

5. Change the verb into the imperfect tense:

(١) دَخَلْتُ الْغُرْفَةَ
(٢) نَجَحْتُ فِي الْامْتِحَانِ
(٣) أَخَذَ الْوَرَقَةَ
(٤) عَرَفْتِ الْمُدِيرَ الْجَدِيدَ
(٥) عَمِلَتْ فِي الْمُخْتَبَرِ
(٦) هَلْ ذَهَبْتَ إِلَى الْقَرْيَةِ؟
(٧) ذَكَرَ اِسْمَ اللهِ
(٨) رَجَعْتُ مِنَ الصَّالَةِ
(٩) شَرِبَتِ اللَّبَنَ وَ الْمَاءَ
(١٠) أَكَلْتِ الْبَطِّيخَ

6. Choose the missing words from those in brackets:

(اَلدَّفْتَرِ ، اَلْمَقَالَةَ ، اَلْقُرْآنَ ، فَهِمْتُ ، أَمْ ، أَشْكُرُ ، اَلْقَصِيرَةُ ، الصَّالَةِ ، هَلْ ، الزُّجَاجَةَ)

(١) كَتَبْتَ فِي الْجَرِيدَةِ

(٢) اَلرِّسَالَةُ فِي

(٣) يَدْرُسُ فَرِيدٌ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ

(٤) اَلْبِنْتُ وَاقِفَةٌ عَلَى الْكُرْسِيِّ

(٥) اَلْمُتَرْجِمُ فِي الْمُخْتَبَرِ؟

(٦) اَلدَّرْسَ الصَّعْبَ

(٧) تَحْمِلُ زَاهِدَةُ

(٨) اَلْمُعَلِّمُ اللَّطِيفُ

(٩) هَلْ تَأْخُذِينَ الْإِبْرِيقَ بِالْمَاءِ الزُّجَاجَةَ بِالْعَصِيرِ؟

(١٠) اَلزَّائِرُ مُنْتَظِرٌ فِي

7. Supply the correct prepositions:

(١) أَيْنَ الزَّعِيمَاتُ الْمُحْتَرَمَاتُ رَاجِعَاتٌ؟

(٢) هَا طَيْرٌ جَمِيلٌ

(٣) اَلْقَلَمُ الْمَائِدَةِ

(٤) اَلْمُسَافِرُ ذَاهِبٌ الْفُنْدُقِ

(٥) رَجَعَ يَاسِينُ الشُّقَّةِ

(٦) هَلْ عَصِيرُ الْمَوْزَةِ الْكُوبِ أَمْ الْفِنْجَانِ؟

(٧) الدَّفْتَرُ وَ الْكِتَابُ الرَّفِّ

(٨) اَلْمَطْبَخِ طَعَامٌ وَ شَايٌ

(٩) قَبَّلْتُ الدَّرَّاجَةَ الْجَدِيدَةَ صَدِيقِي

(١٠) هَلْ يُوسُفُ خَيْرٍ؟

8. Rearrange the words to form correct and meaningful sentences and vocalize fully:

(١) و ، القميص ، التنورة ، الدولاب ، في

(٢) هل ، الذكية ، الجامعة ، السيدة ، في

(٣) عَلى ، الطفلة ، الكرسيّ ، تجلس

(٤) المخلصات ، المسجد ، في ، المؤمنات ، الكبير

(٥) المختبر ، من ، المستمع ، قادم ، المجتهد

(٦) إلى ، الطرد ، المركز ، أحمل ، الخفيف

(٧) اللطيفتان ، تونس ، من ، الأجنبيتان

(٨) السهل ، فشلت ، في ، الاختبار ، هل ، سلمى ، ؟

(٩) لله ، أنا ، خير ، ب ، الحمد

(١٠) عندك ، و ، هل ، القرآن ، القاموس

9. Give the appropriate interrogative particles:

(١) حَالُ الْوَلَدِ الْمَرِيضِ؟

(٢) إِلَى السَّائِقُ الْعَافِلُ ذَاهِبٌ؟

(٣) الْمُتَّهَمُ؟

(٤) الْمُؤَلِّفُ الْمَشْهُورُ؟

(٥) اسْمُ الْمُجْرِمِ الْمَاكِرِ؟

(٦) مِنْ الْمُسَافِرَةُ قَادِمَةٌ؟

(٧) هٰذَا يَا سُلَيْمَانُ؟

(٨) تَفْهَمِينَ الْقِصَّةَ يَا خَيْرَ النِّسَاءِ؟

(٩) الْمَرْأَةُ الصَّالِحَةُ؟

(١٠) فِي الدُّرْجِ مِمْسَحَةٌ أَمْ قَلَمٌ؟

10. Translate into Arabic:
 a. This is a heavy desk and that is a broken bench.
 b. Do you have a pen?
 c. He is returning from the restaurant.
 d. What is on the long shelf?
 e. The bag of the boy is on the cupboard.
 f. The two Muslims are absent.
 g. What is the name of the accused?
 h. Do you (f.) ride a camel or a donkey (f.)?
 i. In the hotel are friendly foreigners (f.).
 j. Is she a servant or a cook?



Exercise Two

1. Give the plural for the underlined words:

(١) اَلطَّبَّاخَةُ الْمَاهِرَةُ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ

(٢) اَلنَّجَّارَانِ الْمُجْتَهِدَانِ فِي الْمَصْنَعِ

(٣) اَلْمُعَلِّمُ وَالْمُدَرِّسَةُ صَدِيقَانِ

(٤) قَرَأَ الْمُؤْمِنُ كِتَابَ اللهِ

(٥) هَلِ الْمُدِيرَةُ الْعَادِلَةُ فِي الْمَعْهَدِ؟

(٦) كَيْفَ الْوَالِدُ يَا مُعَلِّمُ؟

(٧) مَا اِسْمُ الْبِنْتِ يَا مَدِيحَةُ؟

(٨) أَيْنَ الْمُهَنْدِسَةُ النَّشِيطَةُ؟

(٩) مَنِ الطَّالِبَةُ الْمَشْغُولَةُ؟

(١٠) هَلْ هُوَ مُدِيرٌ مُهَذَّبٌ؟

2. Answer the following questions:

(١) مَا هٰذَا؟

(٢) كَيْفَ حَالُكِ؟

(٣) مِنْ أَيْنَ الْخَادِمُ قَادِمٌ؟

(٤) أَيْنَ الْمُصَوِّرُ؟

(٥) هَلْ كَتَبَتِ الْكَاتِبَةُ الْمَقَالَةَ فِي الْمَجَلَّةِ؟

(٦) هَلْ عِنْدَهُ سَيَّارَةٌ أَمْ دَرَّاجَةٌ؟

(٧) مَنِ الْمُنَافِقُ؟

(٨) إِلَى أَيْنَ السَّائِقُ ذَاهِبٌ؟

(٩) هَلْ هُوَ جُنْدِيٌّ قَوِيٌّ أَمْ ضَعِيفٌ؟

(١٠) مَا تِلْكَ؟

3. Give the opposite for the underlined words:

(١) اَلْعَامِلُ الْحَامِلُ حَاضِرٌ

(٢) اَلْمُرْشِدُ الْعَادِلُ قَصِيرٌ

(٣) اَلطَّالِبَةُ الْغَيْبَةُ فِي الْفَصْلِ

(٤) هَلِ الْمُحَاضِرُ الْفَاضِلُ غَائِبٌ؟

(٥) اَلْمَرْكَزُ مُغْلَقٌ

(٦) اَلْمَرْأَةُ الْحَزِينَةُ فِي صَالَةِ الْجَامِعَةِ

(٧) اَلْفُسْتَانُ وَسِخٌ

(٨) هُوَ قَادِمٌ مِنَ الصَّفِّ

(٩) هَلْ تَقْرَأُ خَدِيجَةُ الدَّرْسَ السَّهْلَ؟

(١٠) لَا ، اَلْحَلَّاقَةُ جَمِيلَةٌ

4. Supply the missing particles:

(١) هَلْ شَرِبْتَ شَايًا قَهْوَةً؟

(٢) الطَّائِرَةُ الْجَدِيدَةُ ؟

(٣) إِلَى أُنْتِ ذَاهِبَةٌ؟

(٤) حَالِي يَا طَبِيبُ؟

(٥) مِنْ اَلْقَامُوسُ؟

(٦) أَخَذْتُ الْمِسْطَرَةَ اَلْمِمْسَحَةَ

(٧) اِسْمُ الْأُسْتَاذَةِ؟

(٨) الشَّوْكَةُ وَ الْمِلْعَقَةُ ثَقِيلَتَانِ؟

(٩) مِنْ الْأَجْنَبِيُّ الْأَنِيسُ؟

(١٠) هَلْ يَخْرُجُ مِنَ الْبَابِ مِنَ النَّافِذَةِ؟

5. Link the person with the place by choosing the appropriate word in brackets:

(السُّوقِ ، الْمَصْنَعِ ، الْمُخْتَبَرِ ، الْعِيَادَةِ ، الْمَطْبَخِ ، الْمَكْتَبَةِ ، الْمَدْرَسَةِ ، الْمَسْجِدِ ، الْجَامِعَةِ ، الْبَيْتِ)

(١) اَلْمُدَرِّسَةُ فِي
(٢) اَلْخَادِمُ فِي
(٣) اَلتَّاجِرُ فِي
(٤) اَلْمُمَرِّضَةُ فِي
(٥) اَلْمُسْتَمِعُ فِي
(٦) اَلْأُسْتَاذُ فِي
(٧) اَلطَّبَّاخَةُ فِي
(٨) اَلْعَامِلُ فِي
(٩) اَلْمُسْلِمُ فِي
(١٠) اَلْمُؤَلِّفُ فِي

6. Change the following sentences into the singular:

(١) اَلْبَابَانِ الصَّغِيرَانِ مَفْتُوحَانِ
(٢) اَلْمُجْرِمَاتُ غَبِيَّاتٌ
(٣) اَلْبَيْتَانِ الْجَمِيلَانِ مُعْلَقَانِ
(٤) اَلْمُهَنْدِسُونَ مَوْجُودُونَ فِي الشَّرِكَةِ
(٥) اَلْجَنُوبُ إِفْرِيقِيُّونَ ذَاهِبُونَ إِلَى الشَّرْقِ
(٦) اَلطِّفْلَتَانِ حَاضِرَتَانِ
(٧) اَلْمُدِيرُونَ الصَّالِحُونَ مُسْلِمُونَ
(٨) اَلْهَامِشَانِ وَاسِعَانِ
(٩) اَلْمُسَافِرُونَ فِي الْفُنْدُقِ
(١٠) اَلْكِتَابَانِ الرَّخِيصَانِ فِي الدُّرْجِ

7. Change the verb into the perfect tense:

(١) أَدْرُسُ كِتَابَ اللهِ
(٢) أَنْتَ تَذْهَبُ إِلَى بَيْتِ الْحَاكِمِ
(٣) يَشْرَحُ الْمُدَرِّسُ الرِّسَالَةَ الْقَصِيرَةَ
(٤) تَعْمَلُ فَاطِمَةُ فِي الشَّرِكَةِ
(٥) آخُذُ فِنْجَانَ الشَّايِ
(٦) هِيَ تَقْرَأُ خِطَابَ الْوَلَدِ
(٧) هَلْ أَنْتَ تَرْكَبُ الْحِصَانَ؟
(٨) أَسْمَعُ صَوْتَ الْحِمَارِ
(٩) أَنْتِ تَشْكُرِينَ وَالِدَةَ الطَّالِبِ
(١٠) هِيَ تَقْبَلُ الْهَدِيَّةَ مِنَ الرَّجُلِ

8. Choose the correct word:

(١) اَلْفَلَّاحُونَ الْمُحْتَرِمُونَ (فَاضِلَانِ / فَاضِلُونَ)
(٢) دَخَلْتُ (الشَّرِكَةَ / الشَّرِكَةُ) لَيْلًا
(٣) اَلْمُحَاضِرَانِ الْغَاضِبَانِ (أَمْرِيكِيُّونَ / أَمْرِيكِيَّانِ)
(٤) (فَهِمَ / يَرْكَبُ) الطَّائِرَةَ
(٥) (هَلْ / كَيْفَ) حَالُكَ الْيَوْمَ؟
(٦) هٰذَا عَامٌ (جَدِيدًا / جَدِيدٌ)
(٧) (هِيَ/أَنْتَ) ذَاهِبٌ إِلَى الرِّيَاضِ
(٨) النَّجَّارُ وَ الْحَلَّاقُ وَ الْفَلَّاحُ (مَوْجُودَانِ / مَوْجُودُونَ)
(٩) يَعْمَلُ الطَّبِيبُ فِي (الْمَطْعَمِ / الْعِيَادَةِ)
(١٠) اَلْمُفَتِّشَةُ (عَادِلَتَانِ / عَادِلَةٌ)

9. Translate into English:

(١) رَجَعْتِ مِنَ الْمَسْجِدِ الْكَبِيرِ

(٢) هَلِ الشَّهْرُ بَارِدٌ أَمْ حَارٌّ؟

(٣) أَشْرَحُ الْمَادَّةَ فِي الصَّفِّ

(٤) يَرْكَبُ الْعَرَبِيُّ الْجَمَلَ

(٥) عِنْدَكَ سَفِينَةٌ وَ سَيَّارَةٌ

(٦) أَيْنَ الْمِلَفُّ وَ دَفْتَرُ التِّلْمِيذَةِ؟

(٧) نَعَمْ ، خَرَجَتْ مِنَ الدُّكَّانِ الصَّغِيرِ

(٨) الْعَامِلُونَ وَالْفَلَّاحُونَ فِي الْقَرْيَةِ

(٩) الْجَرَسُ الثَّقِيلُ عَلَى الْمِنْضَدَةِ

(١٠) هَلِ الْمُسَافِرَانِ ذَاهِبَانِ إِلَى "رَأْسِ الرَّجَاءِ الصَّالِحِ" ؟

10. Translate into Arabic:

a. That is a friendly man.
b. The sincere mother is in the room.
c. Do you have a brother and a sister?
d. Is the pupil hardworking?
e. The street is long and wide.
f. This is a short ruler.
g. She is a cultured lady.
h. I have a new car and an old bicycle.
i. You (f.) carry a book.
j. The polite nurse is in the clinic.



Exercise Three

1. Complete with an appropriate verb:

(١) هُوَ اَلْمَقَالَةَ فِي الْجَرِيدَةِ

(٢) أَنَا الْخُبْزَ فِي الْمَطْعَمِ

(٣) أَنْتِ فِي الْمَصْنَعِ

(٤) هِيَ فِنْجَانَ الْقَهْوَةِ فِي الْغُرْفَةِ

(٥) أَنَا آخُذُ الْجَرِيدَةَ وَ أَنْتَ الْمَجَلَّةَ

(٦) اَلْمَرْأَةُ الصَّالِحَةُ اَلْقُرْآنَ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ

(٧) هَلْ أَنْتِ الْحِصَانَ؟

(٨) هَلْ هُوَ أُسْتَاذَهُ فِي الْجَامِعَةِ؟

(٩) أَيْنَ ؟ فِي الْمَكْتَبَةِ أَمْ فِي الْفَصْلِ؟

(١٠) اَلطَّالِبَةُ فِي الْامْتِحَانِ

2. Choose the odd words out:

(١) اَلسَّفِينَةُ – اَلسَّيَّارَةُ – اَلْحَافِلَةُ – اَلْحِمَارُ

(٢) اَلْبُرْتُقَالَةُ – اَلتُّفَّاحَةُ – اَلْقَهْوَةُ – اَلْمَوْزُ

(٣) لَيْلَةٌ – يَوْمٌ – عَامٌ – شَهْرٌ – غُرْفَةٌ

(٤) اَلْقَلَمُ – اَلدَّفْتَرُ – اَلْمِلْعَقَةُ – اَلْكِتَابُ

(٥) كَاتِبٌ – نَجَّارٌ – صَحَفِيٌّ – مُؤَلِّفٌ

(٦) اَلْمِمْسَحَةُ – اَلصَّحْنُ – اَلْفِنْجَانُ – اَلْابْرِيقُ

(٧) غُرْفَةٌ – حَمَّامٌ – شَرِكَةٌ – مَطْبَخٌ

(٨) فُسْتَانٌ – هَامِشٌ – قَمِيصٌ – تَنُّورَةٌ

(٩) مَعْهَدٌ – جَامِعَةٌ – حُجْرَةٌ – مَدْرَسَةٌ

(١٠) كُرْسِيٌّ – بَطِّيخٌ – طَاوِلَةٌ – سَرِيرٌ – دُولَابٌ

3. Ask a question for each statement:

(١) أَنَا بِخَيْرٍ
(٢) لَا ، اِسْمُهَا حَلِيمَةُ
(٣) أَنَا قَادِمَةٌ مِنْ لَنْدَنْ
(٤) اَلرَّجُلُ الْأَنِيسُ مُهَنْدِسٌ
(٥) اَلدَّرْسُ سَهْلٌ
(٦) نَعَمْ ، هِيَ ذَاهِبَةٌ إِلَى الْمَغْرِبِ
(٧) تَشْرَبُ اللَّبَنَ الْبَارِدَ
(٨) فِي الْإِبْرِيقِ الْكَبِيرِ شَايٌ
(٩) اَلْمِسْطَرَةُ وَ الْمِمْسَحَةُ فِي الدُّرْجِ
(١٠) هٰذِهِ حَدِيقَةُ الْحَيَوَانَاتِ

4. Re-arrange the following words to make correct and meaningful sentences:

(١) اَلْغُرْفَةِ ، فِي ، هَلْ ، سَرِيرٌ ، ؟
(٢) مِنْ ، اَلْمُسَافِرُ ، يَرْجِعُ ، اَلْيَوْمَ ، الشَّرْقِ الْأَوْسَطِ
(٣) جَامِعَةِ ، اَلطَّالِبُ ، اَلْقَاهِرَةِ ، يَذْهَبُ ، إِلَى
(٤) مِنَ ، اَلْقَلَمَ ، وَ ، أَخَذْتُ ، الدُّفْتَرَ ، الْحَقِيبَةِ
(٥) اَلْمُعَلِّمَةُ ، الصَّعْبَ ، شَرَحَتْ ، الدَّرْسَ
(٦) اَلْمُؤَلِّفُ ، اَلْقِصَّةَ ، فِي ، يَكْتُبُ ، اَلْبَيْتِ
(٧) الْفُنْدُقِ ، فِي ، كَثِيرُونَ ، زَائِرُونَ
(٨) وَلَدَانِ ، عِنْدَهَا ، مُحْتَرَمَانِ ، بِنْتَانِ ، وَ ، مُخْلِصَتَانِ
(٩) عَادِلَانِ ، وَ ، اَلْمُفَتِّشُ ، الْحَاكِمُ
(١٠) اَللَّيْلَةُ ، ذٰلِكَ ، بَارِدَةٌ ، هٰذِهِ ، حَارٌّ ، يَوْمٌ ، وَ

5. Answer each question by using the appropriate word in brackets:

(مُمَرِّضٌ ، فِي الْمَطْعَمِ ، فِي الْفُرْنِ ، مُؤَلِّفٌ ، فِي جُنُوبِ إِفْرِيقِيَا ، فِي الْجَامِعَةِ ، الْخَادِمُ ، فِي الثَّلَّاجَةِ ، صَحَفِيٌّ ، سَائِقٌ)

(١) مَنْ يَعْمَلُ فِي الْبَيْتِ؟
(٢) أَيْنَ الْخُبْزُ؟
(٣) مَنْ يَعْمَلُ فِي الْعِيَادَةِ؟

(٤) أَيْنَ اللَّبَنُ؟
(٥) مَنْ يَكْتُبُ فِي الْكِتَابِ؟
(٦) أَيْنَ تَأْكُلُ الطَّعَامَ؟
(٧) مَنْ يَكْتُبُ فِي الْجَرِيدَةِ؟
(٨) أَيْنَ يَدْرُسُ الطَّالِبُ؟
(٩) مَنْ يَرْكَبُ السَّيَّارَةَ؟
(١٠) أَيْنَ كِيسُ ثَاوُنْ؟

6. Link up the appropriate grammatical term with the underlined word:

(أَدَاةُ الْاِسْتِفْهَامِ ، اَلْمُثَنَّى ، اَلْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي ، اَلْخَبَرُ ، حَرْفُ الْجَرِّ ، حَرْفُ الْعَطْفِ ، جَمْعُ الْمُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمُ ، اَلْفَاعِلُ ، اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ ، اَلْمَفْعُولُ بِهِ)

(١) اَلرَّجُلُ الْغَنِيُّ بَخِيلٌ
(٢) قَرَأْتُ زَيْنَبُ الْمَسْرَحِيَّةَ
(٣) يَدْرُسُ الطَّالِبُ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ
(٤) هَلِ الْمَرْأَةُ فِي الدُّكَّانِ؟
(٥) أَمَرَ الْمُدِيرُ طَالِبًا بِالْخُرُوجِ
(٦) اَلْخَرِيطَةُ فِي الدُّولَابِ
(٧) اَلْجِدَارَانِ كَبِيرَانِ
(٨) يَفْتَحُ بَابَ الْبَيْتِ
(٩) يَدْخُلُ الْوَالِدُ الْغُرْفَةَ وَ يَجْلِسُ عَلَى الْكُرْسِيِّ
(١٠) اَلْمُعَلِّمُونَ الْمُمْتَازُونَ فِي الْمُخْتَبَرِ

7. Give the opposite of the underlined words:

(١) هَلْ هُوَ نَظِيفٌ أَمْ ؟

(٢) اَلدُّكَّانُ الصَّغِيرُ فِي الْقَرْيَةِ وَ السُّوقُ فِي الْمَدِينَةِ

(٣) اَلْمُرْشِدُ السَّمِينُ يَسْكُنُ مَعَ الْمُدِيرِ

(٤) اَلْمَدْرَسَةُ مُغْلَقَةٌ وَ الْجَامِعَةُ

(٥) يَعْمَلُ الْمُوَظَّفُ الْخَامِلُ وَ الْمُهَنْدِسُ فِي الشَّرِكَةِ

(٦) يَذْهَبُ فِي الصَّبَاحِ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَ مِنَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ فِي الْمَسَاءِ

(٧) أَيْنَ الْمَرْأَةُ الْكَرِيمَةُ وَ الْبِنْتُ؟

(٨) اَلْأُمُّ حَزِينَةٌ فِي الْبَيْتِ وَ الْأَبُ فِي الْبُسْتَانِ

(٩) يَقْبَلُ الْوَلَدُ الْفَقِيرُ قَمِيصًا مِنَ الرَّجُلِ

(١٠) اَلْمُؤْمِنُ يَجْلِسُ مَعَ فِي الْحَافِلَةِ

8. Complete the following tables:

مُفْرَدٌ	مُثَنًّى	جَمْعٌ
بِنْتٌ		
.....	مُدَرِّسَانِ	
.....		مُخْلِصَاتٌ
مُهَنْدِسٌ		
.....	جَامِعَتَانِ	

ب

اَلْمَاضِي		اَلْمُضَارِعُ
هُوَ	سَكَنَ	
هِيَ		تَشْرَبُ
أَنْتِ	أَخَذْتِ	
أَنْتَ	جَلَسْتَ	
أَنَا		أَقْبَلُ

9. Translate into English:

(١) اَلْعَدُوُّ وَ الصَّدِيقُ رَاجِعَانِ مِنَ الْحَاكِمِ
(٢) هٰذَا بُسْتَانٌ كَبِيرٌ
(٣) مَنِ الْوَلَدُ الصَّادِقُ؟
(٤) عِنْدَهَا ثَلَّاجَةٌ وَ فُرْنٌ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ
(٥) يَقْرَأُ الْمَسْرَحِيَّةَ فِي الْمَعْهَدِ
(٦) مَا اسْمُكَ؟ اِسْمِي أَحْمَدُ
(٧) إِلَى أَيْنَ أَنْتِ ذَاهِبَةٌ؟
(٨) اَلْمُهَاجِرُونَ الصَّالِحُونَ فِي بَيْتِ اللهِ
(٩) يَغْسِلُ التِّلْمِيذُ فِي إِمْتِحَانِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ
(١٠) سَمِعْتُ صَوْتَ الْجَرَسِ الْكَبِيرِ

10. Translate into Arabic:
 a. The pen of the teacher (f.) is on the table.
 b. How is the hardworking farmer?
 c. The humble nurses (f.) are outstanding.
 d. Muhammad asked me.
 e. Does she have a new skirt and a clean dress?
 f. Yes, I went to the market of the city.
 g. No, that is the new university of Riyadh.
 h. Who is in the bathroom?
 i. The polytheists are going to the small village.
 j. She remembers her father.



Exercise Four

1. Make the verb in brackets agree with its subject:

(١) أَنَا (كَتَبَ) مَقَالَةً فِي الْمَجَلَّةِ

(٢) أَنْتَ (يَفْهَمُ) قِصَّةَ الْكِتَابِ

(٣) هِيَ (جَلَسَ) فِي الْحَدِيقَةِ

(٤) أَنْتَ (قَرَأَ) كِتَابَ اللهِ

(٥) هُوَ (تَدْخُلُ) دِينَ الْإِسْلَامِ

(٦) أَنْتِ (يَنْجَحُ) فِي اِخْتِبَارِ الْجَامِعَةِ

(٧) هِيَ (سَمِعَ) صَوْتَ الْحِصَانِ

(٨) أَنَا (ذَهَبَ) إِلَى الْمَمْلَكَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ السَّعُودِيَّةِ

(٩) أَنْتَ (رَجَعَ) مِنْ لِيبِيَا

(١٠) هَلْ هِيَ (يَذْكُرُ) اِسْمَ اللهِ

2. Choose the correct words from those in brackets:

(١) (كَيْفَ / مَنْ) صِحَّةُ الْوَالِدَةِ الْمَرِيضَةِ؟

(٢) مَنْ (هٰذَا / هٰذِهِ) الْمُوَظَّفُ الْمُخْلِصُ؟

(٣) أَخَذْتُ الْخُبْزَ (أَمْ / وَ) عَصِيرَ الْبَطِّيخِ

(٤) الصُّنْدُوقُ الثَّقِيلُ (مَفْتُوحٌ / مَفْتُوحًا)

(٥) يَشْرَحُ الْأُسْتَاذُ (الْمَسْرَحِيَّةَ / الْمَسْرَحِيَّةُ)

(٦) (هَلْ / أَيْنَ) الْخَرِيطَةُ؟

(٧) مِنْ (أَيْنَ / مَا) الطَّائِرَةُ قَادِمَةٌ؟

(٨) هَلْ (عِنْدَكَ / عِنْدِي) سَاعَةٌ يَا عَلِيُّ؟

(٩) (أَعْرِفُ / يَسْكُنُ) الطَّالِبُ

(١٠) هَلْ أَنْتِ (قَادِمَةٌ / ذَاهِبَةٌ) مِنْ أَمْرِيكَا؟

3. Fill in the appropriate particles:

(١) مِهْنَتُهُ يَا وَلَدُ؟

(٢) هُوَ فِي مُخْتَبَرِ الْجَامِعَةِ؟

(٣) اَلْأُخْتُ اَلْأَخُ حَاضِرَانِ

(٤) مِنْ هُوَ قَادِمٌ؟

(٥) اَلْفُسْتَانُ جَدِيدٌ أَمْ قَدِيمٌ؟

(٦) اسْمُ الْمُسْتَمِعِ يَا دَاوُودُ؟

(٧) هَلْ دَخَلَ الْمُتَرْجِمُ فَصْلَ الْجَامِعَةِ فَصْلَ الْمَدْرَسَةِ؟

(٨) رَجَعَ مِنْ جَامِعَةِ الرِّيَاضِ؟

(٩) صِحَّةُ الْمَرِيضِ؟

(١٠) هَلِ الْحَافِلَةُ سَلِيمَةٌ مُعَطَّلَةٌ

4. Fill in the appropriate prepositions:

(١) اَلْمِلْعَقَةُ الدُّرْجِ

(٢) رَجَعْتُ الْعِيَادَةِ

(٣) اَلْحَقِيبَةُ الرَّفِّ

(٤) أَيْنَ الْأُسْتَاذُ ذَاهِبٌ؟

(٥) أَيْنَ الْمُسَافِرُ قَادِمٌ؟

(٦) قَرَأَ الْقُرْآنَ الْمَسْجِدِ

(٧) يَجْلِسُ الْكُرْسِيِّ

(٨) آخُذُ اللَّبَنَ الثَّلَّاجَةِ

(٩) هَلِ الْقِدْرُ الْفُرْنِ؟

(١٠) يَعْمَلُ الْعَامِلُ الْمَصْنَعِ

5. a. Give the opposite of the underlined words:

(١) يَدْرُسُ الطَّالِبُ الذَّكِيُّ فِي الْمَكْتَبَةِ

(٢) الْمُعَلِّمُونَ الْغَائِبُونَ مَشْهُورُونَ

(٣) الْمِنْصَدَةُ الطَّوِيلَةُ فِي الْحَدِيقَةِ

(٤) الشَّارِعُ ضَيِّقٌ

(٥) الْبَيْتُ الْمَفْتُوحُ كَبِيرٌ

b. Give the synonym of the underlined words:

(١) الْمَائِدَةُ فِي الْمَطْبَخِ

(٢) شَكَرَ التِّلْمِيذُ الْمُدَرِّسَةَ

(٣) تَكْتُبُ الرِّسَالَةَ الطَّوِيلَةَ

(٤) فَتَحْتُ الشُّبَّاكَ

(٥) صَفُّ الْمَدْرَسَةِ وَسِيعٌ

6. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

(١) خَرَجَ الْمَرْأَةُ مِنَ الدُّكَّانِ

(٢) يَسْمَعُ الصَّوْتَ الْحِمَارِ

(٣) عَرَفْتُ هُوَ الْمُتَرْجِمَةَ

(٤) مَنْ هٰذَا؟ هٰذَا كِتَابٌ

(٥) فِي الدُّولَابِ قَمِيصًا وَ فُسْتَانٌ وَ تُّورَةٌ

(٦) الْمُسْلِمُونَ الصَّالِحَانِ فِي الْمَسْجِدِ

(٧) هَلِ الطِّفْلَةُ جَمِيلَةٌ وَ قَبِيحَةٌ؟

(٨) أَجْلِسِينَ عَلَى الْمِنْصَدَةِ

(٩) يَفْهَمُ الدَّرْسَ الطَّوِيلَةَ

(١٠) أُخَذَ الْجَرِيدَةُ مِنَ الْمَكْتَبَةِ

7. Vocalize the following:

(١) يعرف الوالد ابن المدير

(٢) خرجت من البيت الكبير

(٣) من في مركز المدينة؟

(٤) أعمل في المختبر

(٥) هل عندك ورقة و قلم؟

(٦) فتحه ابن المعلمة

(٧) كيف صحة الطفل؟ هو بخير و الحمد لله

(٨) أنت تقبلين الهديّة من الرجل

(٩) الأستاذ يسكن في القرية الصغيرة

(١٠) يكتب الكاتب قصّة جديدة

8. Re-arrange the following to make correct sentences:

(١) أَيْنَ ، اَلْمُصَوِّرُ ، اَلْمُحْتَرَمُ ، مِنْ ، رَجَعَ

(٢) السُّورَةِ ، الدَّرْسَ ، تَكْتُبُ ، عَلَى

(٣) الشَّرِيكَانِ ، فِي ، النَّاجِحَانِ ، السُّوقِ ، هَلْ ، ؟

(٤) قَادِمُوْنَ ، اَلْحَاكِمِ ، اَلْمُجْرِمُوْنَ ، اَلْعَادِلِ ، مِنْ

(٥) اَللهِ ، يَقْرَأُ ، اَلْمَسْجِدِ ، فِي ، كِتَابَ

(٦) حَالُ ، اَلْمَرِيضَةِ ، السَّيِّدَةِ ، كَيْفَ ، ؟

(٧) حَقِيبَتُهُ ، أَيْنَ ، هَا ، سَلْمَانُ ، يَا ، ؟

(٨) مِنَ ، الدَّفْتَرَ ، الطَّالِبُ ، أَخَذَ ، الدُّرْجِ

(٩) إِلَى ، اَلسَّيِّدُ ، الصَّالَةِ ، يَذْهَبُ

(١٠) فِي ، اَلْمُتَّهَمَةُ ، الشَّارِعِ ، اَلْمَاكِرَةُ

9. Translate into English:

(١) اَلْفُسْتَانُ وَ الْقَمِيصُ فِي دُرْجِ الدُّولَابِ

(٢) أَشْكُرُ مُدِيرَ الْمَعْهَدِ فِي جَامِعَةِ الرِّيَاضِ

(٣) سَمِعْتُ صَوْتَ الْمُدَرِّسِ فِي الْفَصْلِ

(٤) شَرَحَ الْأُسْتَاذُ الْجَدِيدُ الدَّرْسَ الصَّعْبَ عَلَى السَّبُّورَةِ

(٥) هَلْ فَتَحْتَ بَابَ الْمَرْكَبِ؟

(٦) نَعَمْ ، ذَهَبَ الْمُسَافِرُ إِلَى تُونِسَ وَ لِيبِيَا وَ الْمَغْرِبِ وَ السُّودَانِ

(٧) هَلْ تَرْكَبِينَ سَيَّارَةً يَا خَيْرَ النِّسَاءِ؟

(٨) ذٰلِكَ كُرْسِيُّ الْبَيْتِ وَ هٰذِهِ مِنْضَدَةُ الْفَصْلِ

(٩) تَذْكُرُ السَّيِّدَةُ اِسْمَ الْحَاكِمِ الصَّالِحِ

(١٠) آمُرُ التِّلْمِيذَةَ وَ الطِّفْلَةَ بِالصَّلَاةِ

10. Translate into Arabic:

a. I entered the classroom.
b. The short boy ate the apple.
c. Your old pen is on the desk.
d. Who is this? This is a married woman.
e. Do you (f.) have a pen and a ruler?
f. What is the name of the professor? His name is 'Abdullah 'Ali.
g. Are the sincere believers in the mosque?
h. The child sits in the garden.
i. In the city are criminals (m.).
j. He is coming from the airport.



Exercise Five

1. Change the underlined nouns and adjectives in the following sentences from

a. Singular to plural

(ا) إِلَى الْجَمْعِ:

(١) اَلْمُحَاضِرَةُ أَنِيسَةٌ

(٢) اَلْمُجْرِمُ مَاكِرٌ

(٣) هَلِ السَّيِّدَةُ مُخْلِصَةٌ؟

(٤) رَجَعَ الْمُعَلِّمُ الْمُحْتَرَمُ

(٥) أَيْنَ الْمُدِيرَةُ الْعَادِلَةُ؟

b. Singular to dual

(ب) إِلَى الْمُثَنَّى:

(١) هَلِ الطَّالِبُ فِي الْفَصْلِ؟

(٢) مِنْ أَيْنَ الْأُسْتَاذُ الْمُجْتَهِدُ؟

(٣) اَلشَّرِكَةُ مَشْغُولَةٌ

(٤) اَلْمُخْتَبَرُ مُفِيدٌ

(٥) كَتَبَ الْمُؤَلِّفُ قِصَّةً قَصِيرَةً

2. Give the correct form of the verb in brackets:

a. perfect/past tense

(ا) اَلْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي:

(١) هُوَ (دَرَسَتْ) الْمَادَّةَ

(٢) أَنْتَ (فَهِمَ) الْمَسْرَحِيَّةَ

(٣) أَنَا (ذَهَبَ) إِلَى الْمَرْكَزِ

(٤) هِيَ (نَجَحَ) فِي اِمْتِحَانِ الْمَدْرَسَةِ

(٥) أَنْتَ (رَجَعَ) مِنْ مَكَّةَ الْمُكَرَّمَةِ

b. present tense

(ب) اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُضارِعُ:

(١) أنا (أكل) البرتقالة

(٢) هِيَ (أخذ) السَّيَّارَةَ

(٣) أنْتَ (رَكِبَ) الْحِصانَ

(٤) هُوَ (خَرَجَ) مِنَ الشَّقَّةِ

(٥) أنْتَ (شَكَرَ) الْمُدِيرَ وَ الْمُعَلِّمَ

3. Complete the following using:

a. an appropriate adjective

(أ) اَلصِّفَةُ:

(١) اَلسَّيَّارَةُ فِي الْمَصْنَعِ

(٢) اَلسَّيِّدُ شَكَرَنِي

(٣) يَدْرُسُ الْمَادَّةَ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ

(٤) اَلْمُرْشِدَةُ تَذْكُرُ اِسْمَهُ فِي الْجَرِيدَةِ

(٥) اَلْبابُ مَكْسُورٌ

b. a described noun

(ب) اَلْمَوْصُوفُ:

(١) هَلِ الْفاضِلانِ مَوْجُودانِ

(٢) كَتَبَ الْمُمْتازُ الْمَسْرَحِيَّةَ

(٣) يَقْرَأُ الْقَصِيرَةَ فِي الْجَرِيدَةِ

(٤) تَسْكُنُ الشّاعِرَةُ فِي الْجَمِيلِ

(٥) أدْرُسُ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ

4. Supply:

a. prepositions

(أ) حُرُوفُ الْجَرِّ:

(١) أَيْنَ الْمُسَافِرَةُ ذَاهِبَةٌ؟

(٢) اَلْمُصَوِّرُ مَوْجُودٌ الشَّرِكَةِ

(٣) اَلْمِلْعَقَةُ وَ فِنْجَانُ الْقَهْوَةِ الطَّاوِلَةِ

(٤) أَخَذَ الْوَلَدُ قَمِيصًا الدُّولَابِ

(٥) هَلْ هُوَ خَيْرٍ؟

b. interrogative particles

(ب) أَدَوَاتُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ:

(١) اِسْمُ الْمُنَافِقِ؟

(٢) مِنْ الْكَافِرُ؟

(٣) الْمُشْرِكُ الْمَاكِرُ؟

(٤) هِيَ خَبَّازَةٌ أَمْ طَبَّاخَةٌ

(٥) حَالُ الْحَاكِمِ؟

5. Correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

(١) ذَهَبَةٌ إِلَى الْمَعْهَدِ

(٢) اَلْمُنَافِقُونَ كَافِرَانِ

(٣) أَخَذْتُ الْخُبْزَ الْحَارَّةَ

(٤) كَتَبْتُ الْكِتَابُ فِي الْمَكْتَبَةِ

(٥) هَلْ هُوَ رَاجِعَةٌ مِنَ الْجَامِعَةِ؟

(٦) اَلْمُدَرِّسَةُ الْمُحْتَرَمُ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ

(٧) أَنْتِ تَفْتَحُ النَّافِذَةَ

(٨) يَشْرَحُ الْأُسْتَاذَةُ الْمَادَّةَ

(٩) أَكَلَ الْبُرْتُقَالَةَ أَوْ التُّفَّاحَةَ

(١٠) اَلسُّوْرَةُ الْمُفِيدُ

6. Give the grammatical term in Arabic for each underlined word:

(١) يَأْمُرُ الْمُدِيرُ الطَّالِبَ إِلَى الْفَصْلِ

(٢) مَنْ فِي الْحَمَّامِ النَّظِيفِ؟

(٣) اَلْمُحَاضِرُ ذَاهِبٌ إِلَى مَكْتَبَةِ الْجَامِعَةِ

(٤) هُوَ عَدُوُّ اللهِ

(٥) اَلْمُؤْمِنُونَ الصَّالِحُونَ ذَاهِبُونَ إِلَى الْمَسْجِدِ

(٦) تَسْمَعُ الْمُتَزَوِّجَةُ الْمُتَدَيِّنَةُ نَصَائِحَ زَوْجِهَا

(٧) يَشْرَحُ الرَّجُلُ الْمُثَقَّفُ قِصَّةَ الْكِتَابِ

(٨) هَلْ قَبِلَ الْأُسْتَاذُ الْهَدِيَّةَ؟

(٩) اَلطِّفْلَانِ نَائِمَانِ فِي الْحَافِلَةِ

(١٠) اَلشَّرِيكُ النَّاجِحُ فِي الشَّرِكَةِ

7. Read this short text carefully and then answer the questions which follow:

اَلطَّالِبُ الذَّكِيُّ

اِبْنُ الْمُدِيرِ طَالِبٌ فِي الْمَدْرَسَةِ الصَّغِيرَةِ . اِسْمُهُ نَظِيمٌ . هُوَ طَالِبٌ ذَكِيٌّ . فِي الصَّبَاحِ يَذْهَبُ إِلَى الْمَدْرَسَةِ . يَدْرُسُ فِيهَا اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ . يَدْخُلُ الْفَصْلَ مُبَكِّرًا ، يَكْتُبُ الدَّرْسَ الْجَدِيدَ مِنَ السُّوْرَةِ . بَعْدَ ذٰلِكَ يَكْتُبُ الْاِخْتِبَارَ ثُمَّ يَقْرَأُ قِصَّةً قَصِيرَةً مِنْ كِتَابٍ مُفِيدٍ . بَعْدَ الدَّرْسِ يَشْكُرُ الْمُعَلِّمَ وَ يَرْجِعُ إِلَى بَيْتِهِ .

(١) هَلْ اِبْنُ الْمُدِيرِ طَالِبٌ؟

(٢) مَا اِسْمُهُ؟

(٣) هَلْ هُوَ ذَكِيٌّ أَمْ غَبِيٌّ؟
(٤) إِلَى أَيْنَ يَذْهَبُ فِي الصَّبَاحِ؟
(٥) هَلْ يَدْرُسُ اللُّغَةَ الْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةَ أَمِ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ؟
(٦) هَلْ يَكْتُبُ مِنَ السَّبُّورَةِ دَرْسًا قَدِيمًا؟
(٧) مَتَى يَكْتُبُ الْإِخْتِبَارَ؟
(٨) مِنْ أَيْنَ يَقْرَأُ قِصَّةً قَصِيرَةً؟
(٩) هَلْ يَشْكُرُ الطَّالِبُ الْمُدَرِّسَ؟
(١٠) إِلَى أَيْنَ يَرْجِعُ بَعْدَ الدَّرْسِ؟

8. a. Choose the odd one out of the words given: أ) الْإِخْتِيَارُ:

(١) كُوبٌ - مِلْعَقَةٌ - إِبْرِيقٌ - فِنْجَانٌ
(٢) مَجَلَّةٌ - كِتَابٌ - جَرِيدَةٌ - قَلَمٌ
(٣) كَتَبَ - دَرَسَ - شَكَرَ - قَرَأَ
(٤) نَافِذَةٌ - بَابٌ - جِدَارٌ - سَرِيرٌ
(٥) تَرْجِعُ - تَكْتُبُ - تَذْهَبُ - تَخْرُجُ

b. Re-arrange the following to make correct sentences: ب) اَلتَّرْتِيبُ:

(١) رَاجِعٌ ، الزَّائِرُ ، الشَّرْقِ الْأَوْسَطِ ، مِنْ ، هَلْ ، ؟
(٢) اَلثَّقِيلَ ، أَحْمِلُ ، إِلَى ، الْغُرْفَةِ ، الصُّنْدُوقَ
(٣) اَلْحَدِيقَةِ ، تَجْلِسُ ، النَّظِيفَةِ ، اَلْبِنْتُ ، فِي
(٤) اَلرَّجُلُ ، هَلْ ، يَسْكُنُ ، أُمْ ، فِي ، فِي ، مِصْرَ ، الشَّامِ ، ؟
(٥) اَلْمَسْجِدِ ، الصَّالِحُ ، الْمُسْلِمُ ، فِي ، يَقْرَأُ ، الْقُرْآنَ

9. Translate into English:

(١) هَلْ تَذْكُرِينَ صَدِيقَكِ يَا مَرْيَمُ؟

(٢) هُوَ يَفْهَمُ الْمَادَّةَ الصَّعْبَةَ

(٣) الْمُمَرِّضَةُ تَعْمَلُ فِي عِيَادَةِ الطَّبِيبِ

(٤) الْمُثَقَّفَاتُ الْمُخْلِصَاتُ ذَاهِبَاتٌ إِلَى الْمَعْهَدِ

(٥) هَلْ عِنْدَكَ قَلَمُ الطَّالِبِ وَ دَفْتَرِي؟

(٦) نَعَمْ ، رَجَعْتُ مِنْ جَامِعَةِ جَنُوبِ إِفْرِيقِيَا

(٧) لَا ، حَمَلْتُهَا إِلَى جَدَّتِهَا لَيْلًا

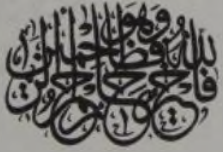
(٨) مَنْ قَرَأَ كِتَابَ اللهِ فِي بَيْتِهِ؟

(٩) يَأْمُرُ اللهُ عَبْدَهُ ، رَسُولَ اللهِ

(١٠) سَمِعَتِ الْأُسْتَاذَةُ صَوْتَ الْوَلَدِ فِي الشَّارِعِ

10. Translate into Arabic:

a. The student lives in the house of the professor (f).
b. Do you (f.) sit on the chair or on the bench in the class?
c. No, I have a weak horse and a strong donkey.
d. She reads the Book of Allah in the room.
e. Are you (m.) going to the Arabic Language institute?
f. Yes, he carried me to the classroom.
g. Who are the excellent pupils in the library?
h. That is the bus of the beautiful city.
i. The cultured visitors and the two religious men are in the apartment of the hotel.
j. You (m.) opened it (m.) and he took the book and the pen from the drawer.



Conversation

مُحَادَثَةٌ

١) تَحِيَّاتٌ
Greetings

هَارُونُ : اَلسَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ

مَرْيَمُ : وَ عَلَيْكُمُ السَّلَامُ

هَارُونُ : كَيْفَ حَالُكِ يَا مَرْيَمُ؟

مَرْيَمُ : أَنَا بِخَيْرٍ وَ الْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ ، وَ أَنْتَ يَا هَارُونُ؟ كَيْفَ الْحَالُ؟

هَارُونُ : بِخَيْرٍ ، اَلْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ

٢) تَعَارُفٌ
Acquaintance

إِبْرَاهِيمُ : اَلسَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ

كُلْثُومُ : وَعَلَيْكُمُ السَّلَامُ

إِبْرَاهِيمُ : مَا اسْمُكِ؟

كُلْثُومُ : اِسْمِي كُلْثُومُ . وَ أَنْتَ ، مَا اسْمُكَ؟

إِبْرَاهِيمُ : إِسْمِي إِبْرَاهِيمُ

كُلْثُومُ : هَلْ أَنْتَ طَالِبٌ أَمْ مُدَرِّسٌ؟

إِبْرَاهِيمُ : أَنَا طَالِبٌ ، وَ مَا مِهْنَتُكِ يَا كُلْثُومُ؟

كُلْثُومُ : أَنَا مُمَرِّضَةٌ

إِبْرَاهِيمُ : أَيْنَ تَعْمَلِينَ؟

كُلْثُومُ : أَعْمَلُ فِي الْعِيَادَةِ ، هَلْ أَنْتَ مِنْ هٰذِهِ الْمَدِينَةِ؟

إِبْرَاهِيمُ : لَا ، أَنَا مِنْ دَرْبَنْ ، وَ أَنْتِ؟

كُلْثُومُ : أَنَا مِنْ كَيبْ تَاوْن

إِبْرَاهِيمُ : أَنَا سَعِيدٌ بِمُقَابَلَتِكِ

كُلْثُومُ : هٰذِهِ فُرْصَةٌ سَعِيدَةٌ

إِبْرَاهِيمُ : إِلَى اللِّقَاءِ

كُلْثُومُ : مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ

(٣) فِي الْمَكْتَبَةِ

At the Library

إِسْحَاقُ : صَبَاحَ الْخَيْرِ

حَلِيمَةُ : صَبَاحَ النُّورِ

إِسْحَاقُ : إِلَى أَيْنَ أَنْتِ ذَاهِبَةٌ؟

حَلِيمَةُ : إِلَى مَكْتَبَةِ الْجَامِعَةِ

إِسْحَاقُ : مَاذَا سَتَفْعَلِينَ هُنَاكَ؟

حَلِيمَةُ : سَأَقْرَأُ جَرِيدَةً وَ مَجَلَّةً ، وَ مَاذَا سَتَفْعَلُ أَنْتَ؟

إِسْحَاقُ : أَنَا ذَاهِبٌ إِلَى الْفَصْلِ

حَلِيمَةُ : لٰكِنَّ الْآنَ وَقْتُ الْاِسْتِرَاحَةِ

إِسْحَاقُ : سَأَكْتُبُ الدَّرْسَ الْجَدِيدَ عَلَى السَّبُّورَةِ

حَلِيمَةُ : إِذَنْ سَأَرَاكَ بَعْدَ حِصَّةِ اللُّغَةِ الْعَرَبِيَّةِ

إِسْحَاقُ : إِنْ شَاءَ اللهُ ، إِلَى اللِّقَاءِ

حَلِيمَةُ : مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ

(٤) الدِّينُ

Religion

سَلْمَانُ : مَسَاءَ الْخَيْرِ

سَلْمَى : مَسَاءَ النُّورِ

سَلْمَانُ : إِلَى أَيْنَ أَنْتِ ذَاهِبَةٌ؟

سَلْمَى : إِلَى الْكَنِيسَةِ

سَلْمَانُ : إِذَنْ ، أَنْتِ نَصْرَانِيَّةٌ

سَلْمَى : نَعَمْ ، وَ هَلْ أَنْتَ نَصْرَانِيٌّ أَيْضًا؟

سَلْمَانُ : لَا ، أَنَا مُسْلِمٌ وَ دِينِيَ الْإِسْلَامُ

سَلْمَى : مَا عَقِيدَةُ الْإِسْلَامِ؟

سَلْمَانُ : لَايُشْرِكُ الْمُسْلِمُ بِاللهِ شَيْئًا أَبَدًا ، وَ يَعْبُدُ اللهَ فَقَطْ

سَلْمَى : أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَعْرِفَ دِينَ الْإِسْلَامِ

سَلْمَانُ : تَفَضَّلِي مَعِي إِلَى الْمَسْجِدِ

سَلْمَى : شُكْرًا جَزِيلًا ، هٰذِهِ فُرْصَةٌ ذَهَبِيَّةٌ

(٥)

أُسْرَتِي

My Family

مُمْتَازٌ : اَلسَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ

زَاهِدَةُ : وَ عَلَيْكُمُ السَّلَامُ ، أَهْلًا وَ سَهْلًا ، تَفَضَّلْ

مُمْتَازٌ : شُكْرًا يَا زَاهِدَةُ

زَاهِدَةُ : كَيْفَ حَالُكَ يَا مُمْتَازٌ

مُمْتَازٌ : أَنَا بِخَيْرٍ وَالْحَمْدُ لِلّٰهِ ، وَ أَنْتِ؟

زَاهِدَةُ : طَيِّبَةٌ ، كَيْفَ زَوْجَتُكَ وَ الْأَوْلَادُ؟

مُمْتَازٌ : كُلُّهُمْ طَيِّبُونَ ، لٰكِنَّ وَالِدَتِي مَرِيضَةٌ جِدًّا

زَاهِدَةُ : شَفَاهَا اللهُ

مُمْتَازٌ : وَ كَيْفَ حَالُ وَالِدِكِ؟

زَاهِدَةُ : هُوَ بِخَيْرٍ

مُمْتَازٌ : مَاذَا يفْعَلُ؟

زَاهِدَةُ : مَا زَالَ تَاجِرًا

مُمْتَازٌ : هَلْ أُخُوكِ أَيْضًا تَاجِرٌ؟

زَاهِدَةُ : لَا ، أَخِي مُحَاسِبٌ فِي الشَّرِكَةِ

مُمْتَازٌ : هَلْ هُوَ مُتَزَوِّجٌ؟

زَاهِدَةُ : نَعَمْ ، هُوَ مُتَزَوِّجٌ وَ زَوْجَتُهُ مُتَدَيِّنَةٌ وَ مُتَوَاضِعَةٌ

مُمْتَازٌ : هٰذَا خَبَرٌ طَيِّبٌ ، أُخْتِي الصَّغِيرَةُ مُتَزَوِّجَةٌ أَيْضًا

زَاهِدَةُ : أَيْنَ تَسْكُنُ؟

مُمْتَازٌ : تَسْكُنُ مَعَ جَدِّي وَ جَدَّتِي فِي دِمِشْقَ

زَاهِدَةُ : أَنَا وَ زَوْجِي ذَاهِبَانِ إِلَى بَغْدَادَ

مُمْتَازٌ : مَتَى؟

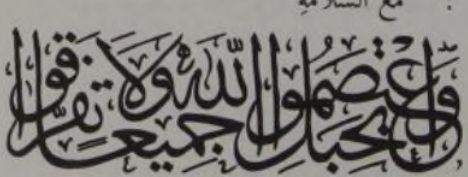
زَاهِدَةُ : غَدًا بَعْدَ الظُّهْرِ ، بِإِذْنِ اللهِ

مُمْتَازٌ : إِذَنْ سَفَرٌ سَعِيدٌ

زَاهِدَةُ : بَارَكَ اللهُ فِيكَ

مُمْتَازٌ : سَنَرَاكُمَا عِنْدَ عَوْدَتِكُمَا ، إِلَى اللِّقَاءِ

زَاهِدَةُ : مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ



Poems

أَناشِيدُ

(١) دُعَاءُ الصَّبَاحِ

Morning Prayer

يَا اِلٰهِي يَا اِلٰهِي — يَا مُجِيبَ الدَّعَوَاتِ
اجْعَلِ الْيَوْمَ سَعِيدًا — وَ كَثِيرَ الْبَرَكَاتِ
وَامْلَأِ الصَّدْرَ انْشِرَاحًا — وَ فَمِي بِالْبَسَمَاتِ
وَأَعِنِّي فِي دُرُوسِي — وَ أَدَاءِ الْوَاجِبَاتِ
وَأَنِرْ عَقْلِي وَ قَلْبِي — بِالْعُلُومِ النَّافِعَاتِ
وَ اجْعَلِ التَّوْفِيقَ حَظِّي — وَ نَصِيبِي فِي الْحَيَاةِ

(٢) اَللّٰهُ

Allah

رَبُّنَا جَلَّ عُلَاهْ — مَا لَنَا رَبٌّ سِوَاهْ
كُلُّ مَنْ حَازَ رِضَاهْ — أَحْرَزَ الْعُمْرَ الْأَرَبْ

رَبُّنَا اللهُ الْكَرِيمْ — دَائِمٌ حَيٌّ قَدِيمْ
أَبْدَعَ الْكَوْنَ الْعَظِيمْ — مُودِعًا فِيهِ الْعَجَبْ

مُودِعًا فِيهِ الدَّلِيلْ إِنَّهُ اللهُ الْجَلِيلْ
مَا لَنَا فِينَا مَثِيلْ جَلَّ مَا أَعْلَاهُ رَبّ

(٣) طَلَعَ الْبَدْرُ عَلَيْنَا

The Moon* has Appeared

طَلَعَ الْبَدْرُ عَلَيْنَا مِنْ ثَنِيَّاتِ الْوَدَاعْ
وَجَبَ الشُّكْرُ عَلَيْنَا مَا دَعَا لِلّٰهِ دَاعْ
أَيُّهَا الْمَبْعُوثُ فِينَا جِئْتَ بِالْأَمْرِ الْمُطَاعْ
جِئْتَ نَوَّرْتَ الْمَدِينَهْ مَرْحَبًا يَا خَيْرَ دَاعْ

* The Moon = Muhammad (Sallalahu Alayhi Wasallam)

(٤) النَّشِيدُ الْإِسْلَامِيُّ

The Islamic Anthem

أَضْحَى الْإِسْلَامُ لَنَا دِينًا وَ جَمِيعُ الْكَوْنِ لَنَا وَطَنَا
تَوْحِيدُ اللهِ لَنَا نُورٌ أَعْدَدْنَا الرُّوحَ لَهُ سَكَنَا
بُنِيَتْ فِي الْأَرْضِ مَسَاجِدُنَا وَالْبَيْتُ الْأَوَّلُ كَعْبَتُنَا
هُوَ أَوَّلُ بَيْتٍ نَحْفَظُهُ بِحَيَاةِ الرُّوحِ وَ يَحْفَظُنَا
فِي ظِلِّ السَّيْفِ تَرَبَّينَا وَ بَنَيْنَا الْعِزَّ لِدَوْلَتِنَا
عِلْمُ الْإِسْلَامِ عَلَى الْأَيَّامِ وَ شِعَارُ الْمَجْدِ لِعِزَّتِنَا

(٥) اَلتِّلْمِيذُ

The Pupil

أَنَا تِلْمِيذٌ صَغِيرُ — اِتَّخَذْتُ الْعِلْمَ نُورًا
يَا تُرَى مَاذَا أَصِيرُ — عِنْدَمَا أَغْدُو كَبِيرَا

هَلْ تُرَى أَغْدُو طَبِيبًا؟ — أَوْ زَعِيمًا أَوْ وَزِيرَا؟
اَوْ تُرَى أَغْدُو أَدِيبًا؟ — أَوْ صَحَافِيًّا شَهِيرَا؟

أَوْ أَكُونُ مُسْتَشَارًا — يَا تُرَى مَاذَا أَكُونُ؟
إِنَّ لِلْغَيْبِ سِتَارًا — لَاتَخَطَّاهُ الْعُيُونُ

سَوْفَ أَسْعَى غَيْرَ وَانٍ — أَطْلُبُ الْعِلْمَ الْكَثِيرَا
رَاجِيًا نَيْلَ الْأَمَانِي — عِنْدَمَا أَغْدُو كَبِيرَا



Some Sayings of the Messenger of Allah

مِنْ أَحَادِيثِ رَسُولِ اللهِ

(١) لَايُؤْمِنُ أَحَدُكُمْ حَتَّى يُحِبَّ لِأَخِيهِ مَا يُحِبُّ لِنَفْسِهِ

None of you believes, until he wishes for his brother what he wishes for himself.

(٢) اَلْمُسْلِمُ مَنْ سَلِمَ الْمُسْلِمُونَ مِنْ لِسَانِهِ وَ يَدِهِ

The Muslim is he from whose tongue and hand the Muslims are safe.

(٣) كُنْ فِي الدُّنْيَا كَأَنَّكَ غَرِيبٌ أَوْ عَابِرُ سَبِيلٍ

Be in this world as if you were a stranger or a passer-by.

(٤) إِنَّ مِنْ خِيَارِكُمْ أَحْسَنَكُمْ أَخْلَاقًا

Verily, the best of you are those who have the best morals.

(٥) لَايَرْحَمُ اللهُ مَنْ لَايَرْحَمِ النَّاسَ

Allah does not have mercy on the one who does not show mercy to people.

(٦) لَيْسَ مِنَّا مَنْ لَمْ يَرْحَمْ صَغِيرَنَا وَ لَمْ يُوَقِّرْ كَبِيرَنَا

He is not of us, he who does not show respect to our young and respect to our elders.

(٧) مَنْ رَأَى مِنْكُمْ مُنْكَرًا فَلْيُغَيِّرْهُ بِيَدِهِ ، فَإِنْ لَمْ يَسْتَطِعْ فَبِلِسَانِهِ ، فَإِنْ لَمْ يَسْتَطِعْ فَبِقَلْبِهِ ، وَذٰلِكَ أَضْعَفُ الْإِيْمَانَ

Whoever of you sees a wrong, let him change it with his hand; if he is not able to do so, then with his tongue; if not, then with his heart and that is the weakest form of faith.



Proverbs

أَمْثَالٌ

(١) اَلْأَمْثَالُ مَصَابِيحُ الْأَقْوَالِ

The proverbs are the lamps of speech.

(٢) اَلْعَجَلَةُ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ وَ التَّأَنِّي مِنَ الرَّحْمَانِ

Impatience is from Shaytan and patience from the Merciful.

(٣) كَلِّمِ النَّاسَ عَلَى قَدْرِ عُقُولِهِمْ

Speak to the people according to their level of understanding.

(٤) أَبُوْ جَعْرَانَ فِي بَيْتِهِ سُلْطَانٌ

The beetle is the sultan in his home.

(٥) رَأْسُ الْكَسْلَانِ بَيْتُ الشَّيْطَانِ

The mind of the lazy (person) is the abode of Shaytan.



Islamic Expressions

عِبَارَاتٌ إِسْلَامِيَّةٌ

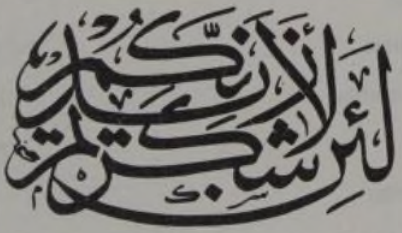
If Allah Wills	إِنْ شَاءَ اللهُ
What Allah wishes	مَاشَاءَ اللهُ
In the Name of Allah	بِسْمِ اللهِ
Praise be to Allah	اَلْحَمْدُ لِلهِ
Allah is Great	اَللهُ أَكْبَرُ
By Allah	وَاللهِ
With Allah's permission	بِإِذْنِ اللهِ
Peace be upon you	اَلسَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ
And peace be upon you too	وَ عَلَيْكُمُ السَّلَامُ
May Allah be with you	اَللهُ مَعَكَ
May Allah bless you	بَارَكَ اللهُ فِيكَ
May Allah help you	أَعَانَكَ اللهُ
May Allah be merciful to you	يَرْحَمُكَ اللهُ

Oral Expressions

لِلتَّعْبِيرِ الشَّفَوِيِّ

Proceed!	تَفَضَّلْ
Welcome!	أَهْلًا وَ سَهْلًا / مَرْحَبًا
Go out!	اُخْرُجْ
Write!	اُكْتُبْ
Read!	إِقْرَأْ
Listen!	اِسْتَمِعْ
Be silent!	اُسْكُتْ
Study!	اُدْرُسْ
Please!	مِنْ فَضْلِكَ
Thanks very much	شُكْرًا جَزِيلًا
Pardon	عَفْوًا
Good morning	صَبَاحَ الْخَيْرِ
Come here	تَعَالَ هُنَا
Good evening	مَسَاءَ الْخَيْرِ
Good bye	إِلَى اللِّقَاءِ
With peace	مَعَ السَّلَامَةِ

Good luck!	فُرْصَةٌ سَعِيدَةٌ
Fine	طَيِّبٌ /بِخَيْرٍ
Take!	خُذْ
Give me!	هَاتِ
What is the matter with you?	مَا لَكَ؟
Till we meet again	سَنَرَاكَ



Arabic Grammatical Terms

مُصْطَلَحَاتٌ نَحْوِيَّةٌ عَرَبِيَّةٌ

1.	a. Alphabet	اَلْحُرُوفُ الْهِجَائِيَّةُ
	b. Conjunction	حَرْفُ عَطْفٍ
	c. Definite Article	أَدَاةُ التَّعْرِيفِ
	d. Expression	تَعْبِيرٌ
	e. Interrogative Particle	أَدَاةُ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِ
	f. Letter	حَرْفٌ
	g. Noun	اِسْمٌ
	h. Particle	أَدَاةٌ
	i. Preposition	حَرْفُ جَرٍّ
2.	a. Gender	جِنْسٌ
	b. Masculine	مُذَكَّرٌ
	c. Feminine	مُؤَنَّثٌ
3.	a. Number	عَدَدٌ
	b. Singular	مُفْرَدٌ

c. Dual — مُثَنَّى

d. Plural — جَمْعٌ

e. Sound Plural — جَمْعُ السَّالِمِ

f. Broken Plural — جَمْعُ التَّكْسِيرِ

4. a. Pronoun — ضَمِيرٌ

b. Attached — مُتَّصِلٌ

c. Detached — مُنْفَصِلٌ

5. a. Case — وَجْهٌ

b. Nominative — مَرْفُوعٌ

c. Accusative — مَنْصُوبٌ

d. Genitive — مَجْرُورٌ

6. a. Tenses — أَزْمِنَةُ الْأَفْعَالِ

b. Past — اَلْمَاضِي

c. Present — اَلْمُضَارِعُ = اَلْحَاضِرُ

d. Imperative — اَلْأَمْرُ

7.	a. Nunation	تَنْوِينٌ
	b. Damma	ضَمَّةٌ
	c. Fatha	فَتْحَةٌ
	d. Kasra	كَسْرَةٌ
8.	a. First Person/Speaker	مُتَكَلِّمٌ
	b. Second Person/Listener	مُخَاطَبٌ
	c. Third Person/Absentee	غَائِبٌ
9.	a. Nominal Sentence	جُمْلَةٌ إِسْمِيَّةٌ
	b. Subject	مُبْتَدَأٌ
	c. Predicate	خَبَرٌ
10.	a. Verbal Sentence	جُمْلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ
	b. Subject	فَاعِلٌ
	c. Verb	فِعْلٌ
	d. Object	مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ

11. a. Indefinite — نَكِرَةٌ
 b. Definite — مَعْرِفَةٌ
 c. Adjective — صِفَةٌ
 d. Noun Described — مَوْصُوفٌ

12. a. Construct State — إِضَافَةٌ
 b. Muḍāfun (first noun) — مُضَافٌ
 c. Muḍāfun ilayhi (second noun) — مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ



The Pronouns

اَلضَّمَائِرُ

The Detached Pronouns

اَلضَّمَائِرُ الْمُنْفَصِلَةُ

The text below shows the symbols appearing in the following tables.

اَلْمُتَكَلِّمُ = (ت) ، اَلْمُخَاطَبُ = (خ) ، اَلْغَائِبُ = (غ) ، مُذَكَّرٌ = (ر) ، مُؤَنَّثٌ = (ث)

	مفرد	مثنى	جمع	
ت	أَنَا	نَحْنُ	نَحْنُ	ر + ث
خ	أَنْتَ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتُمْ	ر
	أَنْتِ	أَنْتُمَا	أَنْتُنَّ	ث
غ	هُوَ	هُمَا	هُمْ	ر
	هِيَ	هُمَا	هُنَّ	ث

The Attached Pronouns

اَلضَّمَائِرُ الْمُتَّصِلَةُ

	مفرد	مثنى	جمع	
ت	يِ	نَا	نَا	ر + ث
خ	كَ	كُمَا	كُمْ	ر
	كِ	كُمَا	كُنَّ	ث
غ	هُ	هُمَا	هُمْ	ر
	هَا	هُمَا	هُنَّ	ث

ا

(١) أَنَا مُسْلِمٌ نَحْنُ مُسْلِمَانِ نَحْنُ مُسْلِمُونَ

(٢) أَنْتَ مُسْلِمٌ أَنْتُمَا مُسْلِمَانِ أَنْتُمْ مُسْلِمُونَ

(٣) هِيَ مُسْلِمَةٌ هُمَا مُسْلِمَتَانِ هُنَّ مُسْلِمَاتٌ

ب

(١) هٰذَا كِتَابِي هٰذَا كِتَابُنَا هٰذَا كِتَابُنَا

(٢) هٰذَا كِتَابُكَ هٰذَا كِتَابُكُمَا هٰذَا كِتَابُكُمْ

(٣) هٰذَا كِتَابُهَا هٰذَا كِتَابُهُمَا هٰذَا كِتَابُهُنَّ

Tenses

أَزْمِنَةُ الْأَفْعَالِ

The Perfect/Past Tense Verb

اَلْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي

	مفرد	مثنى	جمع	
ت	كَتَبْتُ	كَتَبْنَا	كَتَبْنَا	ر + ث
خ	كَتَبْتَ	كَتَبْتُمَا	كَتَبْتُمْ	ر
	كَتَبْتِ	كَتَبْتُمَا	كَتَبْتُنَّ	ث
غ	كَتَبَ	كَتَبَا	كَتَبُوا	ر
	كَتَبَتْ	كَتَبَتَا	كَتَبْنَ	ث



The Imperfect/Present Tense Verb

اَلْفِعْلُ الْمُضَارِعُ

	جمع	مثنی	مفرد	
ر + ث	نَكْتُبُ	نَكْتُبُ	أَكْتُبُ	ت
ر	تَكْتُبُونَ	تَكْتُبَانِ	تَكْتُبُ	خ
ث	تَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبَانِ	تَكْتُبِينَ	
ر	يَكْتُبُونَ	يَكْتُبَانِ	يَكْتُبُ	غ
ث	يَكْتُبْنَ	تَكْتُبَانِ	تَكْتُبُ	

The Imperative/Command

فِعْلُ الْأَمْرِ

ر	اُكْتُبُوا	اُكْتُبَا	اُكْتُبْ	خ
ث	اُكْتُبْنَ		اُكْتُبِي	

Vocabulary: English - Arabic

مُفْرَدَاتٌ : اِنْكِلِيزِيَّةٌ – عَرَبِيَّةٌ

Absent	غَائِبٌ	Ask	سَأَلَ (ـَ)
Accepted, he	قَبِلَ (ـَ)	At	عِنْدَ
Accountant	مُحَاسِبٌ	Ate, he	أَكَلَ (ـُ)
Accused	مُتَّهَمٌ	Author	مُؤَلِّفٌ
Active	نَشِيطٌ	Bag	حَقِيبَةٌ
Aeroplane	طَائِرَةٌ	Baker	خَبَّازٌ
African	اِفْرِيقِيٌّ	Banana	مَوْزَةٌ
Airport	مَطَارٌ	Barber	حَلَّاقٌ
American	أَمْرِيكِيٌّ	Bathroom	حَمَّامٌ
Angry	غَاضِبٌ	Beautiful	جَمِيلٌ
Animal	حَيَوَانٌ	Bed	سَرِيرٌ
Ant	نَمْلَةٌ	Believer	مُؤْمِنٌ
Apartment	شَقَّةٌ	Bell	جَرَسٌ
Apple	تُفَّاحَةٌ	Bench	مَقْعَدٌ
Arab	عَرَبِيٌّ	Bicycle	دَرَّاجَةٌ
Arabic	عَرَبِيَّةٌ	Big	كَبِيرٌ
Article	مَقَالَةٌ	Bird	طَائِرٌ

Book	كِتَابٌ
Bottle	زُجَاجَةٌ
Box	صُنْدُوقٌ
Boy	وَلَدٌ
Bread	خُبْزٌ
Broken	مَكْسُورٌ ، مُعَطَّلٌ
Brother	أَخٌ
Bus	حَافِلَةٌ
Busy	مَشْغُولٌ
Camel	جَمَلٌ
Car	سَيَّارَةٌ
Carpenter	نَجَّارٌ
Carried, he	حَمَلَ (ـِ)
Cat	هِرٌّ = قِطٌّ
Centre	مَرْكَزٌ
Chair	كُرْسِيٌّ
Chalkboard	سَبُّورَةٌ
Cheap	رَخِيصٌ
Child	طِفْلٌ

Church	كَنِيسَةٌ
City	مَدِينَةٌ
Classroom	صَفٌّ = فَصْلٌ
Clean	نَظِيفٌ
Clever	ذَكِيٌّ
Close	مُغْلَقٌ
Cold	بَارِدٌ
Coming	قَادِمٌ
Commanded	أَمَرَ (ـُ)
Company	شَرِكَةٌ
Condition	حَالٌ
Cook	طَبَّاخٌ
Criminal	مُجْرِمٌ
Cultured person	مُثَقَّفٌ
Cunning	مَاكِرٌ
Cup	فِنْجَانٌ
Cupboard	دُولَابٌ
Daughter	بِنْتٌ
Day	يَوْمٌ

Desk	مَكْتَبٌ
Dictionary	قَامُوسٌ
Difficult	صَعْبٌ
Dirty	وَسِخٌ = قَذِرٌ
Disbeliever	كَافِرٌ
Doctor	طَبِيبٌ
Dog	كَلْبٌ
Donkey	حِمَارٌ
Door	بَابٌ
Drank, he	شَرِبَ (ـَ)
Drawer	دُرْجٌ
Dress	فُسْتَانٌ
Driver	سَائِقٌ
Dull	غَبِيٌّ
Easy	سَهْلٌ
Egyptian	مِصْرِيٌّ
Emigrant	مُهَاجِرٌ
Employee	مُوَظَّفٌ ـاةٌ
Enemy	عَدُوٌّ

Engineer	مُهَنْدِسٌ
Entered, he	دَخَلَ (ـُ)
Evening	سَهْرَةٌ = مَسَاءٌ
Examination	اِمْتِحَانٌ
Excellent	مُمْتَازٌ
Explained, he	شَرَحَ (ـَ)
Factory	مَصْنَعٌ = مَعْمَلٌ
Failed, he	فَشِلَ (ـَ)
Family	أُسْرَةٌ = عَائِلَةٌ
Famous	مَشْهُورٌ
Farmer	فَلَّاحٌ
Fat	سَمِينٌ
Father	أَبٌ = وَالِدٌ
File	مِلَفٌّ
Fine	طَيِّبٌ
Food	طَعَامٌ
Fork	شَوْكَةٌ
Fridge	ثَلَّاجَةٌ
Friend	صَدِيقٌ

Friendly	أَنِيسٌ
From	مِنْ
Garden	حَدِيقَةٌ
Generous	كَرِيمٌ
Gift	هَدِيَّةٌ
Girl	بِنْتٌ = فَتَاةٌ
Glass	كُوبٌ = كَأْسٌ
Going	ذَاهِبٌ
Going out	خَارِجٌ
Good	طَيِّبٌ
Governor	حَاكِمٌ
Grandfather	جَدٌّ
Grandson	حَفِيدٌ
Guide	مُرْشِدٌ
Hall	صَالَةٌ
Happy	سَعِيدٌ = مَسْرُورٌ
Hardworking	مُجْتَهِدٌ
He	هُوَ
Headmaster, principal	مُدِيرٌ
Health	صِحَّةٌ
Heard, he	سَمِعَ (ـَ)
Heavy	ثَقِيلٌ
Honest	صَالِحٌ
Horse	حِصَانٌ
Hot	حَارٌّ
Hotel	فُنْدُقٌ
House	بَيْتٌ = مَنْزِلٌ = دَارٌ
How	كَيْفَ
Humble	مُتَوَاضِعٌ
Husband	زَوْجٌ
Hypocrite	مُنَافِقٌ
I	أَنَا
In	فِي
Inactive	خَامِلٌ = كَسُولٌ
Industrious	مُجْتَهِدٌ
Inspector	مُفَتِّشٌ
Institute	مَعْهَدٌ
Iraqi	عِرَاقِيٌّ
Island	جَزِيرَةٌ

Journalist	صَحَفِيٌّ	Listener	مُسْتَمِعٌ
Jug	إِبْرِيقٌ	Lived, he	سَكَنَ (ـُـ)
Juice	عَصِيرٌ	Looked, he	نَظَرَ (ـُـ)
Just	عَادِلٌ	Magazine	مَجَلَّةٌ
Key	مِفْتَاحٌ	Man	رَجُلٌ
Kitchen	مَطْبَخٌ	Many	كَثِيرٌ
Knew, me	عَرَفَ (ـِـ)	Map	خَرِيطَةٌ
Knife	سِكِّينٌ	Margin	هَامِشٌ
Kuwayti	كُوَيْتِيٌّ	Market	سُوقٌ
Laboratory	مُخْتَبَرٌ	Married man	مُتَزَوِّجٌ
Lady	سَيِّدَةٌ	Merchant	تَاجِرٌ
Language	لُغَةٌ	Messenger	رَسُولٌ
Laughing	ضَاحِكٌ	Milk	لَبَنٌ
Learned, he	دَرَسَ (ـُـ)	Month	شَهْرٌ
Lecturer	مُحَاضِرٌ	Mosque	مَسْجِدٌ
Lesson	دَرْسٌ	Mother	أُمٌّ = وَالِدَةٌ
Letter	رِسَالَةٌ = خِطَابٌ	Muslim	مُسْلِمٌ
Library	مَكْتَبَةٌ	Name	إِسْمٌ
Libyan	لِيبِيٌّ	Narrow	ضَيِّقٌ
Light	خَفِيفٌ	Neglectful	غَافِلٌ

New	جَدِيدٌ
News	خَبَرٌ
Newspaper	جَرِيدَةٌ
Night	لَيْلَةٌ
Noble, generous	كَرِيمٌ
Notebook	دَفْتَرٌ
Nurse	مُمَرِّضٌ
Obedient	مُطِيعٌ
Old	قَدِيمٌ
On	عَلَى
Opened, he	فَتَحَ (ـَ)
Orange	بُرْتُقَالَةٌ
Ordered, he	أَمَرَ
Outstanding	فَاضِلٌ
Page	صَفْحَةٌ
Paper	وَرَقَةٌ
Parcel	طَرْدٌ
Park	بُسْتَانٌ
Partner	شَرِيكٌ
Pen	قَلَمٌ
Photographer	مُصَوِّرٌ
Plate	صَحْنٌ
Play, a	مَسْرَحِيَّةٌ
Pleasant	لَطِيفٌ
Poet	شَاعِرٌ
Polite	مُهَذَّبٌ
Polytheist	مُشْرِكٌ
Poor	فَقِيرٌ
Pot	قِدْرٌ
Present	حَاضِرٌ = مَوْجُودٌ
Profession	مِهْنَةٌ
Professor	أُسْتَاذٌ
Pupil	تِلْمِيذٌ
Question	سُؤَالٌ
Rainy	مُمْطِرٌ
Read, he	قَرَأَ (ـَ)
Religion	دِينٌ

Religious	مُتَدَيِّنٌ
Remembered, he	ذَكَرَ (ـُـ)
Respected	مُحْتَرَمٌ
Restaurant	مَطْعَمٌ
Returned, he	رَجَعَ (ـِـ)
Returning	رَاجِعٌ
Rich	غَنِيٌّ
Ring	خَاتِمٌ
River	نَهْرٌ
Rode, he	رَكِبَ (ـَـ)
Room	غُرْفَةٌ = حُجْرَةٌ = قَاعَةٌ
Rubber	مِمْسَحَةٌ
Ruler	مِسْطَرَةٌ
Sad	حَزِينٌ
Sat	جَلَسَ (ـِـ)
Saudi	سَعُوْدِيٌّ
School	مَدْرَسَةٌ
Servant	خَادِمٌ
Servant (slave)	عَبْدٌ
She	هِيَ
Shelf	رَفٌّ
Shirt	قَمِيصٌ
Ship	سَفِيْنَةٌ
Shop	دُكَّانٌ
Short	قَصِيرٌ
Sick	مَرِيضٌ
Sincere	مُخْلِصٌ
Sister	أُخْتٌ
Sitting	جَالِسٌ
Skilful	مَاهِرٌ
Skirt	تَنُّورَةٌ
Sleeping	نَائِمٌ
Small	صَغِيرٌ
Smiling	مُبْتَسِمٌ ، بَاسِمٌ
Soldier	عَسْكَرِيٌّ
Son	اِبْنٌ

Sound	سَلِيمٌ
Speaker	مُتَكَلِّمٌ
Spoon	مِلْعَقَةٌ
Standing	قَائِمٌ = وَاقِفٌ
Station	مَحَطَّةٌ
Stingy	بَخِيلٌ
Story	قِصَّةٌ
Street	شَارِعٌ
Strong	قَوِيٌّ
Student	طَالِبٌ
Studied, he	دَرَسَ (ـُـ)
Subject	مَادَّةٌ
Succeeded, he	نَجَحَ (ـَـ)
Successful	نَاجِحٌ
Table	طَاوِلَةٌ = مَائِدَةٌ = مِنْضَدَةٌ
Tailor	خَيَّاطٌ
Tall	طَوِيلٌ
Tea	شَايٌ

Teacher	مُدَرِّسٌ = مُعَلِّمٌ
Test	اِخْتِبَارٌ
Thanked, he	شَكَرَ (ـُـ)
Thankful	شَاكِرٌ
That	ذٰلِكَ / تِلْكَ
Then	ثُمَّ
They (masc./fem.)	هُمْ / هُنَّ
Thin	نَحِيفٌ
This (masc./fem.)	هٰذَا / هٰذِهِ
To	إِلَى
Took, he	أَخَذَ (ـُـ)
Towards	إِلَى
Translator	مُتَرْجِمٌ
Traveller	مُسَافِرٌ
Truthful	صَادِقٌ
Tunisian	تُونُسِيٌّ
Ugly	قَبِيحٌ
Uncle (paternal)	عَمٌّ
Uncle (maternal)	خَالٌ

Understanding	فَاهِمٌ
Understood, he	فَهِمَ (ـَ)
University	جَامِعَةٌ
Useful	مُفِيدٌ = نَافِعٌ
Village	قَرْيَةٌ
Visitor	زَائِرٌ
Voice	صَوْتٌ
Waiting	مُنْتَظِرٌ
Wall	جِدَارٌ
Watch	سَاعَةٌ
Water	مَاءٌ
Watermelon	بَطِّيخٌ
Weak	ضَعِيفٌ
Well	خَيْرٌ = بِخَيْرٍ
Well-mannered	مُؤَدَّبٌ
Went, he	ذَهَبَ (ـَ)
Went out, he	خَرَجَ (ـُ)

What?	مَا؟
When?	مَتَى ؟
Where?	أَيْنَ؟
Who?	مَنْ؟
Why?	لِمَاذَا ؟
Wide	وَاسِعٌ
Wife	زَوْجَةٌ
Window	نَافِذَةٌ = شُبَّاكٌ
Woman	اِمْرَأَةٌ
Word	كَلِمَةٌ
Worked, he	عَمِلَ (ـَ)
Worker	عَامِلٌ
Writer	كَاتِبٌ
Wrote, he	كَتَبَ (ـُ)
Year	عَامٌ = سَنَةٌ
You (fem.)	أَنْتِ
You (masc.)	أَنْتَ
Zoo	حَدِيقَةُ الْحَيَوَانَاتِ

Proper Names

Allah	اَللّٰهُ	The Ka'ba	اَلْكَعْبَةُ
Qur'an	اَلْقُرْآنُ	Islam	اَلْإِسْلَامُ

أَسْمَاءُ الْأَشْخَاصِ

Names of Persons		Names of Persons	
'Abdullah	عَبْدُ اللهِ	Khadija	خَدِيجَةُ
'Ali	عَلِيٌّ	Khayrun Nisa	خَيْرُ النِّسَاءِ
Dawud	دَاوُدُ	Kulthum	كُلْثُومُ
Farid	فَرِيدٌ	Madiha	مَدِيحَةُ
Fatima	فَاطِمَةُ	Maryam	مَرْيَمُ
Halima	حَلِيمَةُ	Muhammad	مُحَمَّدٌ
Harun	هَارُونُ	Salman	سَلْمَانُ
Hasan	حَسَنٌ	Sulayman	سُلَيْمَانُ
Ibrahim	اِبْرَاهِيمُ	Yasin	يَاسِينُ
Imtiyaz	اِمْتِيَازُ	Yusuf	يُوسُفُ
Ishaq	اِسْحَاقُ	Zahida	زَاهِدَةُ
Ismail	اِسْمَاعِيلُ	Zaynab	زَيْنَبُ

أَسْمَاءُ الْأَمَاكِنِ

Names of Places		Names of Places	
America	أَمْرِيكَا	Mecca	مَكَّةُ الْمُكَرَّمَةُ
Cairo	الْقَاهِرَةُ	Medina	الْمَدِينَةُ الْمُنَوَّرَةُ
The East	الشَّرْقُ	Morocco	الْمَغْرِبُ
Egypt	مِصْرُ	North Africa	شَمَالُ إِفْرِيقِيَا
India	الْهِنْدُ	Paskitan	بَاكِسْتَانُ
Iran	إِيرَانُ	Riyadh	الرِّيَاضُ
Iraq	الْعِرَاقُ	Sudan	السُّودَانُ
Jeddah	جِدَّةُ	Syria	الشَّامُ
Libya	لِيبِيَا	Tunisia	تُونِسُ
London	لَنْدَنُ	The Middle East	الشَّرْقُ الْأَوْسَطُ
Saudi Arabia		الْمَمْلَكَةُ السَّعُودِيَّةُ	



Names of the Months

أَسْمَاءُ الشُّهُورِ

اَلشُّهُورُ الْمِيلَادِيَّةُ		اَلشُّهُورُ الْهِجْرِيَّةُ	
Christian Months		**Muslim Months**	
January	يَنَايِرْ	Muharram	مُحَرَّمٌ
February	فِبْرَايِرْ	Safar	صَفَرٌ
March	مَارِسْ	Rabi'al-Awwal	رَبِيْعُ الْأَوَّلِ
April	أَبْرِيلْ	Rabi'al-Thani	رَبِيعُ الثَّانِي
May	مَايُو	Jumada al Ula	جُمَادَى الْأُولَى
June	يُونِيُو	Jumada al Akhira	جُمَادَى الْآخِرَةُ
July	يُولِيُو	Rajab	رَجَبٌ
August	أَغُسْطُسْ	Sha'ban	شَعْبَانُ
September	سِبْتَمْبَرْ	Ramadan	رَمَضَانُ
October	أُكْتُوبَرْ	Shawwal	شَوَّالٌ
November	نُوفَمْبَرْ	Dhu'l Q'ada	ذُو الْقَعْدَةِ
December	دِيسَمْبَرْ	Dhu'l Hijja	ذُوْ الْحِجَّةِ

Names of the Days

أَسْمَاءُ الْأَيَّامِ

Sunday	يَوْمُ الْأَحَدِ
Monday	يَوْمُ الْإِثْنَيْنِ
Tuesday	يَوْمُ الثُّلَاثَاءِ
Wednesday	يَوْمُ الْأَرْبِعَاءِ
Thursday	يَوْمُ الْخَمِيسِ
Friday	يَوْمُ الْجُمُعَةِ
Saturday	يَوْمُ السَّبْتِ

Names of the Festivals

أَسْمَاءُ الْأَعْيَادِ

'Idul-Fitr	عِيدُ الْفِطْرِ
'Idul Adha	عِيدُ الْأَضْحَى
Beginning of the year	رَأْسُ السَّنَةِ
Birthday of the Prophet	الْمَوْلِدُ النَّبَوِيُّ

Numbers

Cardinal Numbers

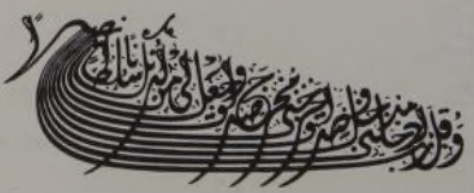
اَلْعَدَدُ

One	١	وَاحِدٌ
Two	٢	إِثْنَانِ
Three	٣	ثَلَاثَةٌ
Four	٤	أَرْبَعَةٌ
Five	٥	خَمْسَةٌ
Six	٦	سِتَّةٌ
Seven	٧	سَبْعَةٌ
Eight	٨	ثَمَانِيَةٌ
Nine	٩	تِسْعَةٌ
Ten	١٠	عَشَرَةٌ
Eleven	١١	أَحَدَ عَشَرَ
Twelve	١٢	إِثْنَا عَشَرَ
Thirteen	١٣	ثَلَاثَةَ عَشَرَ
Fourteen	١٤	أَرْبَعَةَ عَشَرَ
Fifteen	١٥	خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ
Sixteen	١٦	سِتَّةَ عَشَرَ

Seventeen	١٧	سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ
Eighteen	١٨	ثَمَانِيَةَ عَشَرَ
Nineteen	١٩	تِسْعَةَ عَشَرَ
Twenty	٢٠	عِشْرُونَ
Hundred	١٠٠	مِئَةٌ
Thousand	١٠٠٠	اَلْفٌ

Ordinal Numbers

The First	اَلْأَوَّلُ / اَلْأُوْلَى	The Sixth	اَلسَّادِسُ
The Second	اَلثَّانِي / اَلثَّانِيَةُ	The Seventh	اَلسَّابِعُ
The Third	اَلثَّالِثُ	The Eighth	اَلثَّامِنُ
The Fourth	اَلرَّابِعُ	The Ninth	اَلتَّاسِعُ
The Fifth	اَلْخَامِسُ	The Tenth	اَلْعَاشِرُ



THE VERBS

THE IMPERFECT VERB		THE PERFECT VERB	
he accepts	يَقْبَلُ	he accepted	قَبِلَ
he asks	يَسْأَلُ	he asked	سَأَلَ
he eats	يَأْكُلُ	he ate	أَكَلَ
he carries	يَحْمِلُ	he carried	حَمَلَ
he drinks	يَشْرَبُ	he drank	شَرِبَ
he enters	يَدْخُلُ	he entered	دَخَلَ
he explains	يَشْرَحُ	he explained	شَرَحَ
he fails	يَفْشَلُ	he failed	فَشِلَ
he hears	يَسْمَعُ	he heard	سَمِعَ
he knows	يَعْرِفُ	he knew	عَرَفَ
he lives	يَسْكُنُ	he lived	سَكَنَ
he looks	يَنْظُرُ	he looked	نَظَرَ
he opens	يَفْتَحُ	he opened	فَتَحَ
he orders	يَأْمُرُ	he ordered	أَمَرَ
he reads	يَقْرَأُ	he read	قَرَأَ
he remembers	يَذْكُرُ	he remembered	ذَكَرَ
he returns	يَرْجِعُ	he returned	رَجَعَ

he rides	يَرْكَبُ	he rode	رَكِبَ
he sits	يَجْلِسُ	he sat	جَلَسَ
he succeeds	يَنْجَحُ	he succeeded	نَجَحَ
he studies	يَدْرُسُ	he studied	دَرَسَ
he thanks	يَشْكُرُ	he thanked	شَكَرَ
he takes	يَأْخُذُ	he took	أَخَذَ
he understands	يَفْهَمُ	he understood	فَهِمَ
he goes	يَذْهَبُ	he went	ذَهَبَ
he goes out	يَخْرُجُ مِنْ	he went out	خَرَجَ مِنْ
he works	يَعْمَلُ	he worked	عَمِلَ



Recommended References

مَرَاجِعٌ مُقْتَرَحَةٌ

1. Adul-Rauf, M.
 Arabic for English speaking students.
 Shorouk International.
 1977 reprint.

2. Cowan, D.
 Modern Literary Arabic.
 Cambridge University Press.
 1974 New Ed.

3. Hashim, A.
 Arabic Made Easy.
 Shaykh Muhammad Ashraf.
 1969 reprint.

4. Kapliwatzky, J.
 Arabic Language and Grammar (4 vols.)
 Rubin Mass.
 1979 reprint.

5. Mc Carus, E. at el.
 Elementary Modern Standard Arabic (2 vols.)
 Cambridge University Press.
 1983 reprint.

6. Nahmad, H.M. and Haywood, J.A.
 A New Arabic Grammar.
 Lund Humpries.
 1965 reprint.

7. Nadwi, A.A.
 Learn the Language of the Qur'an.
 Dar Al Shorouq.
 1979.

8. Siddiqi, A.H.
 Arabic for Beginners.
 Kazi Publications.
 1979.

A First Arabic Grammar has been written in response to a widespread need for a new Arabic grammar that can serve as a classroom guide for beginners. The purpose of this book is to introduce students to formal grammar. It is assumed that they can already identify the letters of the Arabic alphabet and their sounds.

A First Arabic Grammar does not claim to provide an exhaustive guide; however, it does cover most major grammatical features of Modern Literary Arabic. (A further volume is planned for more advanced learners.)

Special features include:

- simple and concise explanations of grammatical rules;
- gradual and graded introduction of new vocabulary;
- an appendix of proverbs, expressions and poems;
- an English–Arabic vocabulary list;
- revision exercises.

A First Arabic Grammar is an ideal book for anyone beginning the study of Arabic grammar.